



THE  
**ABHIDHAMMA PHILOSOPHY**  
OR  
THE PSYCHO-ETHICAL PHILOSOPHY  
OF EARLY BUDDHISM  
VOL I

By  
BHIKKHU J KASHYAP  
*Director, Nalanda Pali Institute*  
NALANDA (PATNA)  
INDIA

BUDDHA-VIHARA  
NALANDA

B E 2497

A D 1954

FIRST PUBLISHED IN 1942

SECOND IMPRESSION 1954

Printed by Shantilal Jam

at

Swatantra Nava Bharat Press, Kadamkuan, Patna—3

## PREFACE

The books of the Pāli canonical literature of Early Buddhism, usually grouped in three sections called the *Pitakas* or 'baskets', are the following —

(A) *Vinaya Pitaka*—

1 *Pārājika* 2 *Pācittiya* 3 *Mahāvagga* 4 *Culavagga* 5 *Parivāra*

(B) *Sutta Pitaka*—

1 *Dīgha Nikāya* 2 *Majjhima Nikāya* 3. *Samyutta Nikāya* 4 *Anguttara Nikāya* 5 *Khuddaka Nikāya*, which again consists of fifteen books, namely, *Khuddaka Pāṭha*, *Dhammapada*, *Udāna*, *Itivuttaka*, *Suttanipāṭa*, *Vimānavatthu*, *Peṭavatthu*, *Theragāthā*, *Therīgāthā*, *Jātaka*, *Niddesa*, *Paṭisambhūdāmagga*, *Apadāna*, *Buddhavaṃsa* and *Cariyāpitaka*

(C) *Abhidhamma Pitaka*—

1 *Dhammasaṅgani* 2 *Vibhanga* 3 *Dhātukathā* 4 *Puggalapapaññatti* 5 *Kathāvatthu* 6 *Yamaka* 7 *Paṭthāna*

The whole collection, about two times as big as the Mahābhārata, was committed to writing for the first time in Ceylon in the reign of Vattagamini Abhaya, about 25 B C. "Then", says the Mahāvamsa, "the most wise Bhikkhus who had passed down the Tipitaka and the commentaries thereon orally in former times, since they saw that the people were less righteous,



assembled, and in order that the true Doctrine may endure, wrote them down in books '.

The *Vinaya Pitaka* deals with the rules and regulations concerning the governance of the monastic order. The *Sutta Pitaka* contains the discourses delivered by the Buddha at different places on different occasions to individuals or assemblies of different ranks. The language and style of these two *Pitakas* are very simple, which the average reader, even with a working knowledge of Pāli, can follow to a great extent. He may also very profitably refer to the *Atthakathā* wherever he finds difficulty in the text. On the other hand, the *Abhidhamma Pitaka*, which is extremely subtle in its analysis and technical in treatment, is very difficult to understand without the guidance of an able teacher. The Commentaries themselves, though very elaborate and efficient, are not of great help to the beginner.

The *Dhammasaṅgani* forms the very basis of the whole system of Abhidhamma philosophy. But while reading it, the beginner is likely to get bewildered at the long lists of psychological and ethical terms coming one after another from the very outset, with seemingly no system in their arrangement, and, worst of all, the same terms, sometimes, being repeated more than once in the same lists. The real task is to understand the system adopted in the distribution of the terms, which, perhaps, was meant to be studied with a teacher who maintained the traditional interpretation. Buddhaghosa,

in chapter XIV of his famous work, the *Visuddhimagga*, has tried to give a beautiful explanation of the same, but, perhaps, due to lack of space he could not do it in full length. This suggestion was, however, taken up by the Elder Ācariya Anuruddha, who, in about 11th century A.D., wrote, with the same purpose, an independent book, well known as the *Abhidhammatthasangaha* or 'An Introduction to the Categories of the Abhidhamma Philosophy'. The author has compressed the whole of the *Abhidhamma-pitaka* and its supplement the *Visuddhimagga* in this small book, mostly written in aphoristic small sentences.

This book became very popular, and today it is taught as the first book to the students of *Abhidhamma* in the monasteries of Ceylon, Burma, Thailand and Indo-China. It is rather better not to call it the 'first book,' for, it is really a guide through the whole bulk of *Abhidhamma-pitaka*. It gives a very vivid exposition of the method adopted in the analysis and grouping of the states of thing (*Dhammas*) in the *Dhammasangani*, and presents the whole philosophy of *Abhidhamma* as a system. Without first understanding this small book of Anuruddha, the *Dhammasangani* would seem to a beginner as a collection of the parts of a machine which are quite meaningless in their isolation. The *Abhidhammatthasangaha* teaches, in the most masterly way, how to fit them together and make them work for a definite purpose.

The usual custom is that the students are asked to get it by heart before it is explained to them by the teacher, and as they advance in their studies they are also taught to use the *Tikā* for more detailed explanations. The most popular and important *Tikās*, written on it, are the '*Vibhāvinī Tikā*' of Ceylon, and the *Paramatthadīpanī Tikā* of Burma. But, because of their thoroughness in treatment and maturity in style, they are not of much help to the beginner. The learned Professor D. Kosambi has recently written a very useful *Tikā* on it, rightly named *Navanīta Tikā* or 'The Butter Commentary', chiefly meant for the purpose of the student intending to make a study of the book by himself. It has been published by the Mahābodhi Society, Sarnath, in Devanāgarī characters. It is indeed a valuable contribution to Abhidhamma-scholarship, and a boon to the beginners of the subject.

There is a very good English translation, by S. Z. Aung, of the Abhidhammatthasangaha, called 'The Compendium of Philosophy' published by the Pāli Text Society, London. But it is a word for word translation, which, in case of such technical books, generally becomes obscure, if not misleading. One, who has even a working knowledge of Pāli, will realise how difficult it is, at places, to understand the translation, when the corresponding Pāli passages would be so clear and simple to him. The learned translator and the editor, no doubt, have occasionally added valuable foot-notes, but that does not solve the difficulty. The stanzas of the Abhi-

dhammatthasangaha are highly important, inasmuch as they give an intelligent summary of the preceding passages. It is very difficult to understand them without going deep into the portions with which they are concerned. Aung's book would have been much more useful had it added explanatory notes to them.

\*

\*

\*

In the present Exposition, I have followed the example of Professor Kosambi's *Navanīta Tīkā*, and written it chiefly for one who intends to rely on himself for the study of the book. I have tried to make the student acquainted as much as possible with the original Pāli terms, without which it is difficult to enter into the true spirit of the philosophy. I think, it is more natural and useful to let him be familiar with the term *Bojjhanga* and the ideas associated with it than to give him an English word 'wisdom-factor' for it, though the translation is quite exact (*Bodhi*=wisdom *Anga*=factor). I have, therefore, tried to give full explanation of the technical terms and phrases, *even at the risk of making repetitions*, but insisted upon retaining the Pāli words, the English equivalents very often being given in brackets.

The Pāli text of the book has been closely followed from beginning to end, which has been given all along at the foot corresponding to its English rendering put within single inverted commas. In the English rendering, I have stuck more to the sense and spirit of the text than to its words and sentences. Mostly it is a trans-

lation, but sometimes it is only a summary, and sometimes even a short explanation of the corresponding Pāli passages, the purpose being to make it as clear and comprehensible as possible

BHIKKHU J KASHYAP

NALANDA PALI INSTITUTE  
NALANDA (PATNA),  
INDIA

## CONTENTS

PAGE.

### CHAPTER I—CITTA

1—43

#### SECTION I—PRELIMINARY

##### *Types of Consciousness*

§1 The process of cognition, 1 §2 Classes of the types of consciousness, 3 §3 The strength of Vipāka consciousness, 7 §4 The consciousness of Arhat, 8 §5 The three Planes of consciousness, 8

#### SECTION II—KĀMĀVACARA CITTA

§6 Introductory, 11 §7 Rooted in Lobha, 12 §8 Rooted in Dosa, 14 §9 Rooted in Moha 15 §10 Vipāka Citta, 17 §11 Kiriya Citta, 19 §12 Sobhana Citta, 20 §13 Kusala Citta, 21 §14 Vipāka Citta, 23 §15 Kiriya Citta, 25 §16 Kāmāvacara Sobhana, 26 §17 Kāmāvacara Cittāni, 26

#### SECTION III—MAHAGGATA CITTA

§18 Introductory, 28 §19 Kusala 29 §20 Vipāka, 30 §21 Kiriya, 31 §22 Rūpāvacara consciousness, 32 §23 Kusala, 32

§24 Vipāka, 33 §25 Kiriya, 34 §26 Arūpa consciousness, 35

SECTION IV—LOKUTTARA CITTA

§27 Introductory, 36 §28 Magga Citta, 37. §29 Phala Citta, 38 §30 Supra-mundane consciousness, 38

SECTION V—FINAL CALCULATION OF  
ALL THE TYPES OF CITTA

§31 One way of calculation, 39 §32 Another way of calculation, 39 §33 Types of different Jhāna, calculated separately, 42

CHAPTER II—CETASIKA

44—86

SECTION I—HOW MANY AND WHAT  
ARE THEY ?

§1 Introductory, 44 §2 Sabbacittasādhāraṇa, 45 §3 Pakinnaka, 47 §4. Akusala Cetasiṅka, 48 §5 Sobhana Cetasiṅka

SECTION II—WHAT FACTORS ARE  
PRESENT IN WHICH TYPES OF  
CONSCIOUSNESS ?

§6 Introductory, 53 §7 Sabbacittasādhāraṇa, 53 §8 Pakinnaka, 53 §9 Akusala, 59 §10 Sobhana Cetasiṅka, 62

SECTION III—WHAT TYPES OF CONSCIOUSNESS HAVE WHAT AND  
HOW MANY FACTORS ?

§11 Preliminary, 66 §12 Factors that

combine in the types of supra-mundane consciousness, 67 §13 Factors that combine in the types of Mahaggata consciousness, 70. §14 Factors that combine in the types of Kāmāvacara good consciousness, 72 §15 Factors that combine in the types of immoral consciousness, 72. §16 Factors that combine in the types of Ahetuka consciousness, 82

### CHAPTER III—PAKINNAKA

87—120

§1 In relation to Vedanā, 87 §2 In relation to Hetu, 91 §3 In relation to function (Kicca), 94 §4 In relation to Dvāra, 104 §5 In relation to Ālambana, 109 §6 In relation to organs (Vatthu), 116

### CHAPTER IV—CITTA-VĪTHI

121—146

#### SECTION I—PANCADVĀRA VĪTHI

§1 Introductory, 121 §2 Six classes of six kinds, 121 §3 Citta Khana, (Thought moments), 123 §4 Relative parallelism between mind and matter, 125 §5 Strength of the Impression, 126 §6 Very distinct object (Ati Mahanta Ālambana), 127 §7 Distinct object (Mahanta Ālambana), 129



§8—10 Slight object, very slight object,  
kinds of presentation of the objects at the  
five doors of senses, 130 §11 Summing  
up, 131

SECTION II—MANODVĀRAVĪTHI  
CITTA

§12 Kāmāvacara, 133, §13 Appanā Ja-  
vanavāra, 136

SECTION III

§14 Tadālabhāna, 137 §15 Javana, 139  
§16 Difference in beings, 141 §17 Life  
planes (Bhūmi), 144

CHAPTER V—VĪTHIMUTTA 147—166

§1 Introductory, 147 §2 Planes of life,  
147 §3 Who are born in what planes, 149  
§4 Patisandhi, 150 §5 The four kinds of  
Karma, 154 §6 The types of Karma, 156  
§7 The types of their Resultant, 158  
§8. The causes of death, 162. §9 Patisandhi,  
154 §10 The Stream of Personality, 165

CHAPTER VI—RŪPA 167—190

§1 Introductory, 167 §2 What is Rūpa,  
167 §3 Eleven types of the material qua-  
lities, 168 §4 Classification of the material  
qualities, 172 §5 The Four generating

principles, 175 §6 The scope of the four principles, 177 §7 Kamma Samutthāna Kalāpa, 179 §8 Citta Samutthāna Kalāpa, 180. §9 Utu-Samutthāna Kalāpa, 181 §10 Āhāra-Samutthāna Kalāpa, 182 §11 The places of their occurrence, 182 §12 In the Kāma Loka, 184 §13 At the time of death, 185 §14. In the Rūpa-Loka, 186 §15 NIBBĀNA, 189

CHAPTER VII—COLLECTION OF ABHI-  
DHAMMIC TERMS

191—210

§1 Introductory, 191 §2 Immoral terms, 191 §3 Of the mixed terms, 195 §4 Of terms that pertain to enlightenment, 199 §5 Of the miscellaneous terms, 206

CHAPTER VIII—THE PHILOSOPHY OF  
RELATION

211—246

SECTION I

*Paticca Samuppāda*

§1 Introductory, 211 §2 Paticca Samuppāda, 211 §3 Paticca Samuppāda reviewed, 214

SECTION II

*Patthāna Naya*

§4 Introductory, 222. §5 Ways of correlation, 233 §6 Reality, Concept, Term, 243 §7 How is the meaning understood, 246

CHAPTER IX

247—274

*Kammatthāna*

(Objects For the practice of meditation)

SECTION I SEMARTHA KAMMAT-  
THĀNA

§1 Introductory, 247 §2 The objects of meditation 249 §3 The Stages of meditation, 252 §4 The Symbols of meditation, 254 §5 The process of meditation in the Rūpāvacara Jhāna, 259 §6 About the Kammatthāna with which Appanā is not possible, 260 §7 Performance of miracles, 261

SECTION II

*Vipassanā Kammatthāna*

§8 Introductory, 263 §9 Purification of character, 265 §10 Purification of consciousness, 265 §11 Purification of views, §12 Purification by removal of doubts, §13 Purification by discerning what is the

right path and what is not, 266 §14 Purification of knowledge by realizing the true path §15 Course of cognition leading to the attainment of the Supramundane, 268 §16 The modes of emancipation, 271 §17 Persons at the four stages of the Supramundane, 272 §18 Nirodha Samāpatti (cessation of the mental process) 273



नमो तस्मै भगवतो अरहतो सम्मासम्बुद्धस्त

## CHAPTER I TYPES OF CONSCIOUSNESS

### SECTION I PRELIMINARY

#### §I *The process of cognition*

Eye, ear, nose, tongue and skin, these are called the *Pañca-Dvāra* or the 'five doors', through which we receive information about the outside world, and the process of cognition that takes place through these is called *Pañca-Dvāra-Vīthi* or the 'course of cognition through the five doors'. There is also a sixth door, called *Mano-Dvāra* or 'the mind-door,' through which we cognise our own ideas, as in memory, dream, hallucination or imagination, when the object is not presented but represented. The process of this cognition is called *Manodvāra-Vīthi* or 'the course of cognition through the mind-door'.

Of these two, the first (i.e., *Pañcadvāra-Vīthi*) may be roughly explained by the simile of a man sleeping under a mango tree.

A man, lost in deep sleep, is lying at the foot of a mango tree. A fruit drops down and rolls by his side. He is suddenly aroused from his slumber, and strives to find out what has disturbed him. He sees the mango fruit near

by, picks it up, and smells and examines it. Having ascertained that it is quite ripe and good, he eats it.

Here —

(1) The 'deep sleep' is compared to the passive state of mind, when it is having its own course, undisturbed by any kind of impression, either objective or ideational. This state of mind is called *Bhavanga*.

(2) 'Getting up and trying to find out what has disturbed him' is like that hazy state of mind when the subject feebly strives to make out whether the stimulus came through the eye, or the ear, or the nose, or the tongue, or the skin (touch). This is called *Pañcadvārāvajjana* or 'turning to impressions at the five doors of senses'.

(3) 'Seeing the mango fruit' is like the arising of the particular sensation, either of the eye or of any other four doors of senses. It is sensation pure and simple, free from any reflection over it.

The sensation of the eye is called *Cakkhu-Viññāna*, of the ear *Sota-Viññāna*, of the nose *Ghāna-Viññāna*, of the tongue *Vijhā-Viññāna*, and of the skin *Kāya-Viññāna*.

(4) 'Picking up the mango fruit' is like the mind receiving the stimulus as an independent *object* existing outside in the world of reality. This is called *Sampaticchana* or the 'recipient consciousness'.

(5) 'Smelling and examining the mango fruit' is like the mind reflecting over the object and trying to understand it in the light of its previous experiences. This is called *Santīraṇa* or 'the investigating consciousness.'

(6) 'Ascertaining that the mango is quite ripe and

good' is like the mind giving the object a definite place in the field of knowledge. This is called *Votthapana* or 'the determining consciousness'.

(7) 'Eating the mango' is like the mind tending to adjust the object according to its own suitability. This is the most lively state of consciousness, in which the subject is fully conscious of itself and determines its own attitude towards the object. This is called *Javana* or 'the active consciousness'.

In *Manodvāra-Vīthi* or 'the course of cognition through the mind-door', the object of cognition is not a stimulus of the outside world, but an ideational image arising from within, which presents itself with an already ascertained and determined character. This course of cognition, therefore, begins with the sixth stage of the *Pañca-Dvāra Vīthi*, i.e., with *Votthapana* or 'the determining consciousness'. Here, the same function of mind is called *Manodvārāvajjana* or 'consciousness turning to the impressions at the mind-door'.

## §2 *Classes of the types of consciousness*

There are three classes of the types of consciousness, namely, (A) good, (B) bad, and (C) neutral.

A. The good class of consciousness is that which is accompanied by any of the three 'good tendencies', i.e., *Allobha* (self-sacrificingness), *Adosa* (good-will) and *Amoha* (insight). It is again subdivided into three kinds, namely, (a) moral (*Kusala*), (b) resultant (*Vipāka*), and (c) inoperative (*Kīṃyā*).



(a) Our activities (*Javana*-consciousness) accompanied by the above good tendencies—as, helping the needy, giving shelter to the forlorn, taking the precepts, listening to the high and elevating sermons, worshipping the Buddha, and such other meritorious deeds—are the types of moral (*Kusala*) consciousness

(b) Moral actions done in one life yield their 'resultant' in the next, which determines the mental disposition of the man, in accordance with the nature and strength of the good tendencies with which those actions were mostly conditioned. These are the types of 'resultant' (*Vipāka*) consciousness, accompanied by the three good tendencies

(c) The activities of the Arahant are always accompanied by the good tendencies. But, his love-for-living being thoroughly uprooted, they do not yield 'resultant' (*Vipāka*), and he does not come again in the cycle of life after his death. His activities are, therefore, called *Kiriyā* or inoperative and barren.

The types of 'resultant' (*Vipāka*) consciousness are ethically non-moral (*Avyākata*), as, they being the passive side of our mind, there is no activity in them. The actions of the Arahant are also non-moral (*Avyākata*), as, they are *Kiriyā* or barren, yielding no 'resultant' to effect birth after death.

The types of consciousness belonging to this class are technically called *Sobhana* (good).

B. The bad class of consciousness is that which is accompanied by any of the three bad tendencies, namely, *Lobha* (greed), *Dosa* (hate) and *Moha* (dullness and dece-

ption) Ethically, the types of consciousness belonging to this class are immoral (*Akusala*)

All the above types of good and bad consciousness are called *Sahetuka* or that which are accompanied by any of the six tendencies—*Lobha*, *Dosa*, *Moha*, *Alobha*, *Adosa*, *Amoha*—called the *Hetus*

The word *Hetu* is here used in the sense of a 'root' As the root supports and maintains the tree so the *Hetu* does to the above good and bad types of consciousness

C The neutral class of consciousness is that which is not accompanied by any of the good or bad tendencies They are, therefore, called *Ahetuka* or those that are devoid of the *Hetus*, and, for the same reason, they are neither moral nor immoral but *non-moral* (*Avyākata*)

All activities (*Javana*-consciousness) must necessarily be *Sahetuka* for, how can they survive unless they are supported and nourished by a *Hetu*? How can a man be prompted to do a thing unless he has got either a good or a bad *Hetu*?

There is only one exceptional instance of *Javana*-consciousness which is not accompanied by any of the *Hetus* It is the innocent smile of the Arhat

His smile is *Ahetuka*, i.e., not accompanied by any of the *Hetus*, and is *Avyākata* also for the same reason It, being incapable of giving a 'resultant', is inoperative or *Kiriyā* It is called *Hasitupphāda-Citta*

*Pañca-Dvārāvajjana* or the tendency of the mind of turning to impressions at the five doors when a stimulus is received from without, and *Manodvārāvajjana* or the

tendency of the mind of turning to impressions at the mind-door when an idea is cognised from within are but automatic functions of consciousness, and so they are neither moral nor immoral but non-moral (*Avyākata*). They are so premature that they cannot be accompanied by a *Hetu*. They are too feeble to yield a 'resultant', therefore, they are inoperative or *Kiriyā*.

*Cakkhu-Viññāna* (eye-consciousness), *Sota-Viññāna* (ear-consciousness), *Ghāna-Viññāna* (nose-consciousness), *Jivhā-Viññāna* (tongue-consciousness), and *Kāya-Viññāna* (touch-consciousness) are pure sensations of external stimuli. These sensations are very commonly seen to be different in different persons, though they may have originated from the identical stimuli. The same thing appears very much pleasant to one but quite repulsive to the other. The same colour or taste often appears quite differently to different persons.

What is it due to? Abhidhamma holds that it is due to difference of *Vipāka* or karmic result of previous life in different persons. If the sensation yields a pleasant feeling, it should be thought that it is a *Kusala-Vipāka Citta* or 'a resultant consciousness of previous good karma'.

And, if the sensation yields an unpleasant feeling, it should be thought that it is an *Akusala-Vipāka Citta* or 'a resultant consciousness of previous bad karma'.

*Sampaticchana* (recipient consciousness) and *Santīraṇa* (investigating consciousness) are also similarly *Vipāka Citta*, differing in different persons according to the result of their previous good or bad karma.

These seven types of 'resultant' consciousness—*Cakkhu-Viññāna*, *Sota-Viññāna*, *Ghāṇa-Viññāna*, *Jivhā-Viññāna*, *Kāya-Viññāna*, *Sampaticchana* and *Sanlīrana*—are too feeble to be rooted in any of the *Hetus*. They are, therefore, *Ahetuka*, and *Avyākata* as well, for, they are neither moral nor immoral.

### § 3 The strength of Vipāka-consciousness

The bad *Hetus*—*Lobha* (greed), *Dosa* (hate) and *Moha* (dullness and deception)—are the animal qualities in a man. They come as fits of instinctive impulses. Under their influence, they make a man lose his self-consciousness and reasoning faculty.

The *Vipāka* of immoral consciousness, therefore, is a very dull and feeble consciousness, eminently instinctive. It must be *Ahetuka*, for, it is too feeble to be rooted in the *Hetus*.

The *Vipāka* of a moral consciousness, with weak *Hetus*, is also a feeble consciousness, and, therefore, *Ahetuka*.

The good *Hetus*—*Alobha* (self-sacrificingness), *Adosa* (good-will) and *Amoha* (insight) on the other hand, are the higher or rational qualities in a man. One, who develops these *Hetus* in him, is able to overcome his instinctive side, and make his consciousness more moral and rational.

The *Vipāka* of strong moral consciousness, therefore, is a consciousness as strong and good as the types of moral consciousness themselves, accompanied by the good *Hetus*. It is *Sahetuka*, strong enough to be rooted

in the *Hetus*

#### §4 *The consciousness of Arhat*

The Arhat has thoroughly dispelled his *Avijjā* (ignorance), and destroyed all the *Samyojanas* (fetters) *Lobha* (greed), *Dosa* (hate) and *Moha* (dullness and deception) are thoroughly uprooted in his consciousness. He never does an *Akusala* deed.

His consciousness is always rooted in the good *Hetus*, but, it does not yield any *Vipāka* (karmic result), because he is completely free from love-for living. It is inoperative or *Kiriyā*.

#### §5 *The three planes of consciousness*

Every time we feel how very restless and self-willed our mind is. We can exercise but little control over it. We try our best to concentrate it upon a thing, but, in a moment, it slips away to irrelevant corners, quite unnoticed. This is so, because of our diverse desires influencing it constantly. This consciousness is, therefore, called *Kāmāvacara Citta* or the consciousness that roams in the world of desires.

This is the first plane called the *Paritta Bhūmi* or the plane of weak consciousness.

It is not possible to realise *Nibbāna*, 'the Summum Bonum', with this weak consciousness lost in the world of desires. The Buddha has taught how to make it strong and steady, and to exercise mastery over it. This practice is called *Yoga*, and one who practices it is called a

*Yogāvacara*

The *Yogāvacara* begins—as fully described in the *Visuddhimagga*—by meditating upon a suitable object which is associated with the idea of form. After due practice, he is able to attain the different stages of *Jhāna* or ecstasy in which his mind becomes perfectly concentrated on the ‘object’ (*kammatthāna*). This consciousness is called *Rūpāvacara Citta*, or ‘the *Jhāna*-consciousness of the form’.

The *Yogāvacara*, intending to rise higher, gives up all ideas of form also, and attains *Jhāna*, meditating upon *Arūpa* or ‘the formless subjective *Kammatthānas*—as, *Anantākāsa* (infinity of space), *Ananta Viññāna* (infinity of consciousness), *Ākiñcañña* (nothingness), and *Neva Saññā Nāsaññā* (a state wherein cognition is so very subtle that it cannot be said whether it is or is not). This consciousness is called *Arūpāvacara Citta* or ‘the *Jhāna*-consciousness of the formless’.

These two classes of *Jhāna* consciousness—*Rūpāvacara* and *Arūpāvacara*—constitute the second plane called the *Mahaggata Bhūmi* or the higher grade of consciousness.

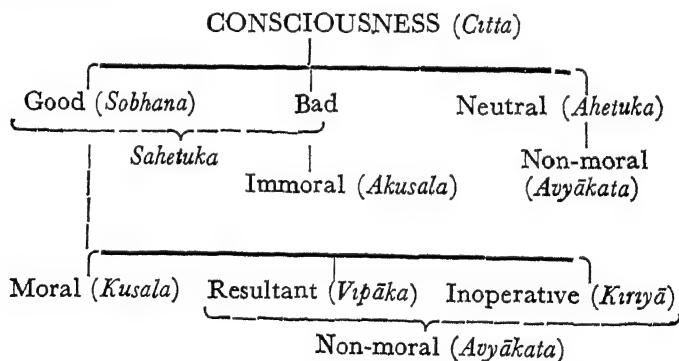
In the *Mahaggata Bhūmi*, the mind of the *Yogāvacara* is highly steady and concentrated. But, when he breaks his *Jhāna* and comes to normal state of life, his consciousness may not be free from love for life, conceit or ignorance, and he may fall a victim to *Lobha* (greed), *Dosa* (hate) and *Moha* (dullness and deception).

He then meditates upon the *Anicca* (impermanent), *Dukkha* (miserable) and *Anatta* (substanceless) nature of all existence, and thereby attains *Jhāna* upon *Nibbāna*.

(*Ni*+*Vāna*=no+desire = desirelessness) He is able to destroy his fetters one by one and attain the highest plane of consciousness called the *Lokuttara Bhūmi* or 'the Supramundane plane'

It is, however, not necessary that one should practise *Rūpa* and *Arūpa Jhānas* in order to be able to attain to *Lokuttara Bhūmi*. A man of very strong *Kusala Vipāka* may directly start meditating upon *Anicca*, *Dukkha* and *Anatta*, obtain *Jhāna* on *Nibbāna*, destroy his fetters, and attain to *Lokuttara Bhūmi*.

The following diagram will show the scheme of classification —



## SECTION II

### KĀMĀVACARA CITTA

(*Consciousness of the world of desires*)

#### §6 *Introductory*

‘Having adored the Buddha, the Univalled and Perfectly Enlightened One, with His sublime Doctrine and noble Brotherhood, I am herein going to speak about the categories of the Psycho-ethical Buddhist philosophy called Abhidhamma

‘In reality, the categories of the Abhidhamma are four —(1) Consciousness, (2) Psychic factors, (3) Matter and (4) Nibbāna. All things are included under these four heads’ (I)

‘There are four grades of consciousness—namely, (1) consciousness of the world of desires, (2) consciousness of the *Rūpa-Jhāna*, (3) consciousness of the *Arūpa-Jhāna*, and (4) Supramundane consciousness concentrated on *Nibbāna*’ (II)

‘Of the above four grades, which is the consciousness of the world of desires?’ (III a)

---

I Sammāsambuddhamatulam sasaddhammagānuttamam  
Abhivādiya bhāsissam abhidhammatthasangaham  
Tattha vuttābhidhammatthā catudhā paramatthato,  
Cittam cetasikam rūpam nibbānamitī sabbathā

II Tattha cittaṃ tāva catubbidham hoti, Kāmāvacaram,  
Rūpāvacaram, Arūpāvacaram, Lokuttaram ceti

III (a) Tattha katamaṃ kāmāvacaram?



It is the following types of consciousness —

I

AKUSALA CITTA

(Types of immoral consciousness)

§7 Rooted in Lobha (greed)

(i) If a man is quite cheerful while doing an act, his consciousness is called *Somanassasahagata* or 'accompanied by delight'. And his consciousness is *Upekkhāsahagata* if it is accompanied by indifference.

(ii) It is often thought right by some people to sacrifice animals at a certain place, or to gamble on a certain day, or to tell a lie to befool others on a certain date, or even to rob and murder a man if he does not belong to his faith. Such false views are called *Ditthi*, which pretend to justify immorality, but have really *Lobha* at the root.

If the immoral consciousness is accompanied by such a *Ditthi* it is called *Ditthagatasampayutta*, and if it is not so accompanied it is called *Ditthagatavip̐payutta*.

(iii) The consciousness of one who is very quick in performing a moral or immoral act is called *Asankhārika* or that which is 'neither hesitating nor urged by others'. *Sasankhārika* consciousness, on the other hand, is that which is either preceded by some hesitation or is persuaded by some one else.

Taking these classifications together, we get the following eight types of immoral consciousness rooted in *Lobha* —

1 'Delighted, accompanied by a false view, unhesitated and uninstigated

2 'Delighted, accompanied by a false view, hesitated or instigated

3 'Delighted, unaccompanied by a false view, unhesitated and uninstitigated

4 'Delighted, unaccompanied by a false view, hesitated or instigated

5 'Indifferent, accompanied by a false view, unhesitated and uninstitigated

6 'Indifferent, accompanied by a false view, hesitated or instigated

7. 'Indifferent, unaccompanied by a false view, unhesitated and uninstitigated

8 'Indifferent, unaccompanied by a false view, hesitated or instigated' (III b)

A man, greedy to eat the flesh of an animal, may sacrifice it in the name of some deity, and take delight in it, thinking that he is doing a quite proper thing Or, a man, with false patriotism, may tell a lie to fulfil some end, and be delighted, thinking that he is serving the cause of his mother-country Such a consciousness is of the first type, if the act is done unhesitatingly or without the instigation of any one else But if it is preceded by some hesitation, or it has been done at the instigation of some one else, it is an example of the second type

---

III (b) Somanassasahagatam dīṭṭhigatasampayuttam asankhārikamekaṃ, sasaṅkhārikamekaṃ Somanassasahagatam dīṭṭhigatavippayuttam asaṅkhārikamekaṃ, sasaṅkharikamekaṃ Upekkhāsahagatam dīṭṭhigatasampayuttam asankharikamekaṃ, sasankhārikamekaṃ Upekkhāsahagatam dīṭṭhigatavippayuttam asankhārikamekaṃ, sasaṅkhārikamekaṃ ti imāni aṭṭha pi lobhasahagatāni cittāni nāma.

The third and the fourth types are very common. We know that it is bad to kill, or to hurt others, or to steal, or to commit adultery, or to lie, or to do any other sinful act. Nonetheless, we do indulge in them frequently and also derive delight therefrom.

The fifth, the sixth, the seventh, and the eighth types are the same as above, if the act is done not with delight but with a feeling of indifference, as a matter of course.

### §8 Rooted in Dosa (hate)

If an object causes us displeasure, or stands in the way of the fulfilment of our desire, we begin to hate it. The feeling goes on intensifying, and a time comes when the very idea of it would rouse an excitement in us, a feeling of deep antipathy. This state of mind is called *Domanassa*.

*Domanassa* is accompanied by an urge to attack and annihilate the object of hate. This incitement is called *Paṭigha* or rage.

It is *Asankhārika* if, in this raging state of mind, a man commits a crime unhesitatingly, without being instigated by anyone else. And it is *Sasankhārika*, if it is committed after some hesitation, or at the instigation of someone else.

Hence, there are two types of consciousness rooted in *Dosa*, namely —

1 'Excited, accompanied by antipathy and rage, unhesitated and uninstigated'

2 'Excited, accompanied by antipathy and rage, hesitated or instigated' (IV)

---

IV ~~Domanassa bhāgātem paṭighasāpāyuttam asankhārikame~~

It is clear that there can be no *Somanassa* (delight) or *Upekkhā* (indifference) in this agitated state of mind accompanied by antipathy. It cannot also be associated with any right or wrong view, for, it is so furious that there is no consideration of right or wrong in it at the moment.

The executioner executes the criminal, not because he has any personal grudge against him, but simply because he has been ordered to do it by his officer. Here, he has to create an excitement in him accompanied by antipathy, and invoke a rage to drop the axe. His consciousness is, therefore, *Sasankhārika*, i.e., of the second type.

#### §9 Rooted in Moha (dullness and deception)

*Moha* is an essential condition of all immoral consciousness. *Lobha* and *Dosa* can not possibly arise if there is no *Moha*. But, if there is only the element of *Moha*, it will make the consciousness thoroughly confused. This state of mind is called *Momūha Citta* or 'a confused consciousness'.

It is difficult to understand a thing definitely in this consciousness. It is full of doubts. If the doubts are very much puzzling it is called *Vicikicchā-sampayutta* or a perplexed consciousness.

A *Momūha Citta* cannot also concentrate itself upon any object. It is a distracted mind. If the distraction is strong, it is called *Uddhacca-sampayutta* or 'a restless consciousness'.

There cannot be either *Somanassa* or *Domanassa* in this consciousness. They are essentially *Upekkhā-sahagata* or

'accompanied by an ignorant indifference'

Hence there are two types of consciousness rooted in *Moha* —

1 'Accompanied by indifference, and is perplexed

2 'Accompanied by indifference, and is restless' (Va)

'Perplexity' and 'restlessness' arise themselves in us due to ignorance. They are not created knowingly by us, either hesitatingly or unhesitatingly, for, knowledge is quite opposed to them, like light to darkness. Nor can any one else instigate us to be perplexed or restless. Therefore, the question of *Asankhārika* and *Sasankhārika* does not arise in these types of consciousness.

'Thus, there are altogether twelve types of immoral consciousness' (Vb)

'There are eight types of consciousness rooted in *Lobha*, two in *Dosa*, and two in *Moha*. Thus, there are altogether twelve types of immoral consciousness' (VI)

## II

### AHETUKA CITTA

(*Types of consciousness too feeble to be rooted in Hetus*)

A feeble consciousness, in which the subject is not fully self-aware, cannot be rooted in the *Hetus*. It is, therefore, called *Ahetuka Citta*.

There are two classes of *Ahetuka Citta*, namely, (I)

V (a) *Upekkhāsahagatam vicikicchāsampayuttamekam, upekkhāsahagatam uddhaccasampayuttamekam ti imāni dve pi momūhacittāni nāma*

V (b) *Icevaṃ sabbathā pi dvādasākusalacittāni samattāni*

VI *Atthadhā lobhamūlāni dosamūlāni ca dvīdhā,*

*Moha mūlāni ca dve ti dvādasākusalā sīyunt*

*Vipāka* and (2) *Kiryā* .

§10 *Vipāka Citta* (resultant consciousness)

When we receive a stimulus, a sensation arises from within. If the sensation is visual it is called *Cakkhu-Viññāna* or 'eye-consciousness,' if it is audible it is called *Sota-Viññāna* or 'ear-consciousness,' if it is olfactory it is called *Ghāna-Viññāna* or 'nose-consciousness,' if it is gustatory it is called *Jivhā-Viññāna* or 'tongue-consciousness,' and if it is tactual it is called *Kāya-Viññāna* or 'touch-consciousness'.

After a sensation has arisen, the mind receives the stimulus as an object existing outside as a reality. It is called *Sampaticchana-Citta* or 'the recipient consciousness'.

After *Sampaticchana*, the mind begins to reflect on the object trying to understand it in the light of its previous experience. It is *Santīrana* or 'the investigating consciousness'.

All these seven functions—*Cakkhu-Viññāna*, *Sota-Viññāna*, *Jivhā-Viññāna*, *Kāya-Viññāna*, *Sampaticchana* and *Santīrana*—are carried out subconsciously. They are called *Vipāka-Citta* or 'the resultant consciousness,' arising as result of previous good and bad Karmas.

Neither *Somanassa* nor *Domanassa* can possibly arise in these types of consciousness, they being too feeble and hazy. At these stages, there can be only the feeling of *upekkhā* or indifference.

Touch-sensations, however, being much stronger than the other, cannot have an indifferent feeling. A touch must be either painful or pleasant at this very stage. It

is painful if it is (a) *Akusala-Vipāka* or 'the resultant consciousness of previous bad karmas', and pleasant, if it is (b) *Kusala-Vipāka* or 'the resultant consciousness of previous good Karmas'

#### A *Akusala Vipāka*

(Resultant consciousness of the previous bad Karmas)

'These are the seven types of resultant consciousness of previous bad Karmas —

- 1 'Eye-consciousness, accompanied by indifference
- 2 'Ear-consciousness, accompanied by indifference
- 3 'Nose-consciousness, accompanied by indifference
- 4 'Tongue-consciousness, accompanied by indifference'
- 5 'Touch-consciousness, accompanied by pain
- 6 'Recipient consciousness, accompanied by indifference
- 7 'Investigating consciousness, accompanied by indifference' (VII)

#### B *Kusala Vipāka*

(Resultant consciousness of the previous good karmas)

'These are the eight types of resultant consciousness of the previous good karmas —

- 1 'Eye-consciousness, accompanied by indifference
- 2 'Ear-consciousness, accompanied by indifference
- 3 'Nose-consciousness, accompanied by indifference.

---

VII Upekkhāsahagatam cakkhaviññānam, tathā sotaviññānam, ghānaviññānam, jvāhaviññānam, dukkhasahagatam kāyaviññānam, upekkhāsahagatam sampīcchanacittam upekkhāsahagatam santānānacittam ceti imāni satta pi akusalavipākacittāni nāma

- 4 'Tongue-consciousness, accompanied by indifference
- 5 'Touch-consciousness, accompanied by a pleasant feeling
- 6 'Recipient consciousness, accompanied by indifference.
- 7 'Investigating consciousness, accompanied by indifference
- \*8 'Investigating consciousness, accompanied by delight' (VIII)

### §11 Kīriyā Citta

(The types of consciousness which do not yield Vipāka)

*Pañca-Dvārāvajjana* or 'consciousness turning to impression 'at the five doors of senses,' and *Manodvārāvajjana* or 'consciousness turning to impressions at the mind-door' are the automatic tendencies of the mind, when a stimulus is received from without, or an idea is caught from within. They are *Ahetuka*, and Kīriyā as well, for, they cannot yield *Vipāka* or karmic result

*Hasituppāda* or 'the smile of the Arhat' is also *Ahetuka* Kīriyā, it is not accompanied by the Hetus, and does not produce *vipāka*

Hence, these are the three types of consciousness unaccompanied by the Hetus, and not capable of yielding karmic result—

---

\* If the object is very dear, *Somanassa* or delight may arise even at this stage

VIII Upekkhāsahagatam cakkhaviññānam, tathā sotaviññānam ghānaviññānam, jivhāviññānam, sukhasahagatam kāyaviññānam, upekkhāsahagatam sampaticchanacittam, somanassasahagatam santiranacittam, upekkhāsahagatam santuranacittam ceti imāni aṭṭha pi kusala vipākāhetukacittāni nāma



1 'Consciousness turning to impressions at the mind-door, accompanied by indifference

3 'Smile of the Arhat, accompanied by delight '

(IXa)

### Summary

'Thus, there are altogether eighteen types of consciousness not rooted in the Hetus ' (IXb)

'There are seven types of resultant consciousness of the previous bad karmas, eight types of resultant consciousness of the previous good karmas and three types of consciousness which do not yield a resultant Thus there are altogether eighteen types of consciousness unaccompanied by the Hetus ' (X)

### III

#### § 12 *Sobhana Citta*

(Types of good consciousness)

The above thirty types of consciousness are not progressive The twelve immoral are degenerating, and the eighteen Ahetukas are neutral

The types of consciousness that are going to be described henceforth, are, on the other hand, good (Sobhana), inasmuch as they are either moral or their resultant, or the actions of the Arhat

'These are fifty-nine, from one way of calculation, and ninety-one, from the other

IX (a) Upekkhāsahagatam pañcadvārāvajjanacittam, tathā manodvārāvajjanacittam, somanassasahagatam hasituppādacittam cetu imāni tīni pi ahetukakriyācittāni nāma

(b) Icevā sabbathā pi atthārasāhetukacittāni samattāni

X Sattākusalapākāni puññapākāni atthadhā,

Kriyācittāni tīni ti atthārasa ahetukā

‘The types of consciousness, except the immoral and the Ahetuka ones, are called Sobhana or ‘good’ ’ (XI)

They are of three kinds, namely, (a) moral (Kusala), (b) resultant (Vipāka), and (c) inoperative (Kiriya)

( a )

§ 13 *Kusala Citta*

(*Types of moral consciousness*)

Helping the poor and needy, giving shelter to the forlorn, saving the creatures from distress and destruction, serving one’s parents and elders, worshipping the Buddha, listening to the inspiring discourses on the Dhamma, and such other meritorious acts are Kusala or ‘moral’ They are all essentially rooted in the two Kusala-Hetus, namely, Alobha (self-sacrificingness) and Adosa (good-will), for, a greedy or an enraged man would not do them

Amoha (insight) is also necessary, no doubt, because a man generally performs them with *Ñāna* or ‘knowledge’, that thereby he will be better and purer in this life and hereafter When a Buddhist Upāsaka goes to the Vihāra, offers Pūjā before the image of the Buddha, gives alms to the monks, listens to religious discourses, and keeps eight precepts, he is conscious that he is doing a very meritorious act by which he will be better in his next birth His consciousness, in this case, is *Ñāna-Sampayutta* or accompanied by knowledge, i.e., right view

On the other hand, there are also occasions when we do a good act spontaneously, on the spur of the moment

---

XI Pāpāhetukamuttāni sobhanāni ti vuccare  
Ekūṇasatthi cittāni atthekānavutī pi vā

A man sees someone drowning in the river, and at once jumps in and saves him, or, sees a wretched beggar in the street and drops a coin before him. Such spontaneous acts are not accompanied by the reflection that 'they will yield good karmic result'. They are, as it were, automatically done, on the spur of the moment. Such a type is called *Ñāna-Vip̐payutta* or 'unaccompanied by right view'.

There may be another example of *Ñāna-Vip̐payutta* consciousness. A man may not really understand that it is good to do a certain act, still he does it, simply because it is customary, or he sees others doing the same. A monk comes to the house of a lay disciple, and he is worshipped both by the father and the child. Here, the father's consciousness is *Ñāna-Sampayutta*, for he does it knowingly that he gains a merit thereby. But the child does it simply because he sees his father doing so. His consciousness is, therefore, *Ñāna-Vip̐payutta*. [Navanītatikā 1 12]

If the action is done—either *Ñāna-Sampayutta* or *Ñāna-Vip̐payutta*—unhesitatingly and without the suggestion of anyone else, it is *Asankhārika Citta*. And it is *Sasankhārika*, if it is done after some hesitation, or at the suggestion of some one else.

It may be also *Somanassa-Sahagata* or *Upekkhā-Sahagata*, as in the types of immoral consciousness rooted in *Lobha* [1, §7]

Thus, these are the eight types of *Kāmāvacara* moral consciousness —

1 'Delighted, accompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

2 'Delighted, accompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested

3 'Delighted, unaccompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

4 'Delighted, unaccompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested

5 'Indifferent, accompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

6 'Indifferent, accompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested

7 'Indifferent, unaccompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

8 'Indifferent, unaccompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested' (XII)

(b)

#### §14 Vipāka Citta

(Types of moral resultant consciousness)

Good acts, done during the course of this life, determine the nature of the mental disposition of a man in his next birth

A man is of a philanthropic nature, because his acts in previous life were conditioned by a strong *Alobha*, and of a miserly nature, because his acts in previous life were conditioned by very weak *Alobha*. A man is of a very compassionate and loving nature, because his acts in pre-

---

XII Somanassasahagatam ñānasampayuttam asankhārikamekam, sasanīhārikamekam Somanassasahagatam ñānavippayuttam asankārikamekam sasanīhārikamekam Upekkhāsahagatam ñānasampayuttam asankhārikamekam, sasanīhārikamekam Upekkhāsahagatam ñānavippayuttam asankhārikamekam sasanīhārikamekam ti imāni attha pi kāmāvacarakusalacittāni nāma

vious life were conditioned by a strong *Adosa*, and of an irritative and quarrelsome nature, because his acts in previous life were conditioned by a very weak *Adosa*. A man is of a sharp intelligence and clear understanding, because his acts in previous life were conditioned by a strong *Amoha*, and a dullard, because his acts in previous life were conditioned by a weak *Amoha*.

A man, whose acts are primarily conditioned by *Lobha*, *Dosa* and *Moha*, will not be born as a man at all, but as a beast or a creature of some other lower species, with an instinctive consciousness, which is as weak as *Upakkhā-Sahagata Santirana Citta*. That is why, the discriminative faculty and memory of the beast are so feeble. Among the beasts themselves there are grades of mental development, which is due to the degree of the strength of *Lobha*, *Dosa* and *Moha* in their previous births.

A type of *Sahetuka Kusala Citta* is reflected just as it is in its *Vipāka* (resultant). Therefore, there will be as many types of *Vipāka Citta* (resultant consciousness of the previous life) as there are *Kusala Citta* (moral consciousness).

‘Thus, there are the eight types of *Kāmāvacara* ‘resultant’ consciousness, rooted in the *Hetus* —

1 ‘Delighted, accompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

2 ‘Delighted, accompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested

3 ‘Delighted, unaccompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

4 ‘Delighted, unaccompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested

5 'Indifferent, accompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

6 'Indifferent, accompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested

7 'Indifferent, unaccompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

8 'Indifferent, unaccompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested' (XIII)

(c)

#### §15 *Kiryā Citta*

(*Types of inoperative consciousness*)

An Arhat does good acts, but they produce no *Vipāka*, as he is totally free from desire (*Tanhā*) His acts are *Kiryā* or 'inoperative'

Hence, just as the types of *Kusala Citta*, there are eight types of consciousness of the Arhat —

1 'Delighted, accompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

2 'Delighted, accompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested

3 'Delighted, unaccompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

4 'Delighted, unaccompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested

---

\* XIII Somanassasahagatam ñānasampayuttam asankhārikamekam, sasankhārikamekam Somanassasahagatam ñānavippayuttam asankhārikamekam, sasankhārikamekam Upekkhāsahagatam ñānasampayuttam asankhārikamekam, sasankhārikamekam Upekkhāsahagatam ñānavippayuttam asankhārikamekam, sasankhārikamekam ti imāni attha pi sahetukakāmāvacaravipākacittāni nāma

5 'Indifferent, accompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

6 'Indifferent, accompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested

7 'Indifferent, unaccompanied by knowledge, unhesitated and unsuggested

8 'Indifferent, unaccompanied by knowledge, hesitated or suggested' (XIV a)

§16 *Types of Kāmāvacara good consciousness summed up —*

Thus the types of *Kāmāvacara Kusala*, *Vipāka* and *Kiriyā* consciousness, rooted in the *Hetus*, are altogether twenty-four [*Kusala* 8 + *Vipāka* 8 + *Kiriyā* 8 = 24] (XIV b)

'The twenty-four types of *Kāmāvacara Kusala*, *Vipāka* and *Kiriyā* consciousness, rooted in the *Hetus*, are so classified according to **feeling** [*Somanassa* and *Upekkhā*], **knowledge** [*Ñānasampayutta* and *Ñānavippayutta*], and **being suggested or not** [*Asankhārika* and *Sasankhārika*]' (XV)

§17 *Types of Kāmāvacara consciousness summed up —*

'There are altogether fifty-four types of *Kāmāvacara* consciousness, namely —

*Vipāka* 23 [*Ahetuka* 15 + *Sahetuka* 8 = 23]

XIV (a) *Somanassasahagatam ñānasampayuttam asankhārikamekam, sasankhārikamekam Somanassasahagatam ñānavippayuttam asankhārikamekam, sasankhārikamekam Upekkhāsahagatam ñānasampayuttam asankhārikamekam, sasankhārikamekam Upekkhāsahagatam ñānavippayuttam asankhārikamekam, sasankhārikamekam ti imāni aṭṭha pi sahetukakāmāvacarakriyācittāni nāma*

XIV (b) *Icevā sabbathā pi catuvisati sahetukakāmāvacarakusalavipākakriyācittāni samattāni*

XV *Vedanāñānasankhārabhedena catuvisati Sahetukāmāvacarapuññāpākakriyā matā*

*Kusala* and *Akusala* 20 [*Kusala* 8 + *Akusala* 12 = 20]

*Kīryā* 11 (*Ahetuka* 3 + *Sahetuka* 8 = 11) ' (XVI)

---

XVI     *Kāme* *tevīsa* *pākāni* *puññāpuññāni* *visatī*,  
      *Ekādasa* *kīryā* *cetī* *catupaññāsa* *sabbathā*



## SECTION III

## MAHAGGATA-CITTA

(The higher grade of consciousness  $\equiv$  \* *Jhāna-consciousness*)

## §18 Introductory

The mind of the average man is restless under the blinding influence of diverse desires. He feels it very difficult to check it from running away here and there at random. However attentive he might be, still he fails to keep the 'object' on the upper surface of awareness, which is sinking down quite incessantly.

It is only after a considerable amount of practice, that the Yogāvacara is able to exercise mastery over his mind, and to concentrate fully. He obtains the different stages of *Jhāna* (ध्यान), in which the awareness of the object becomes quite steady, and which he can maintain as long as he desires.

It is called *Mahaggata Citta* or 'the higher grade of consciousness'. There are two kinds of it, namely, (A) *Rūpāvacara* (*Jhāna* of the form) and (B) *Arūpāvacara* (*Jhāna* of the formless).

(A)

*Rūpāvacara Citta*

(*JHĀNIC*—consciousness of the form)

The types of *Rūpāvacara*-consciousness are also of three kinds, namely (a) moral (*Kusala*), (b) resultant (*Vipākā*) and (c) inoperative (*Kiriyā*).

---

\* JHĀNA = ध्यान = ecstasy

(a)

§19 *Kusala (moral)*

The Yogāvacara obtains *Jhāna*, by meditating on one of the twenty-six objective *Kammattānas*, such as earth, water, fire etc [Ch IX §2], which are *Rūpa* or form. It is, therefore, called *Rūpāvacara Citta* or *Jhāna-consciousness of the form*.

At the first stage of *Jhāna*, **five psychic factors** are very prominent in him, namely, (1) *Vitakka* (applying the mind on the object of meditation), (2) *Vicāra* (sustaining the mind on the object), (3) *Pīti* (a thrill of pleasant sensation), (4) *Sukha* (ease), and (5) *Ekaggatā* (one-pointedness=concentration)

At the second stage of *Jhāna*, *Vitakka* is excluded, and there remain only the residue four factors.

At the third stage of *Jhāna*, *Vicāra* is also excluded, and there remain only the residue three factors

At the fourth stage of *Jhāna*, *Pīti* is also excluded, and, there remain only two factors, viz, *Sukha* and *Ekaggatā*

At the fifth stage of *Jhāna*, '*Sukha*' is substituted by *Upekkhā*, in the result, there remain only two factors. This is the highest stage of *Rūpāvacara Jhāna*

Hence there are altogether five types of *Rūpāvacara Kusala Citta* —

1 'The first stage of *Kusala Jhāna*, with *Vitakka* (applying the mind on the object), *Vicāra* (sustaining the mind on the object), *Pīti* (a thrill of pleasant sensation), *Sukha* (ease), and *Ekaggatā* (one-pointedness=concentration)

2 'The second stage of *Kusala Jhāna*, with *Vicāra*, *Pīti*, *Sukha* and *Ekaggatā*

3 'The third stage of *Kusala Jhāna*, with *Pīti*, *Sukha* and *Ekaggatā*

4 'The fourth stage of *Kusala Jhāna*, with *Sukha* and *Ekaggatā*

5 'The fifth stage of *Kusala Jhāna*, with *Upekkhā* and *Ekaggatā*' (XVII)

In the above stages of *Jhāna*, the factors have been excluded one by one. There is an *Anga-Samatikkamana* or gradual suppressing of the factors

(b)

#### §20 *Vipāka* (resultant)

The three *Kusala Hetus*, viz., *Alobha*, *Adosa* and *Amoha* are very strong in the above types of *Rūpāvacara-Kusala* consciousness, which are free from all immoral tendencies. They are, therefore, reflected, just as they are, in the mental disposition of the next life.

Hence there are also five types of *Rūpāvacara Vipāka* consciousness, corresponding to the five *Kusala* ones —

1 'Resultant consciousness of the first stage of *Jhāna*, with *Vitakka* (applying the mind on the object of meditation), *Vicāra* (sustaining the mind on the object), *Pīti* (a thrill of pleasant sensation), *Sukha* (ease), and *Ekaggatā* (one-pointedness)

---

XVII Vitakkavicārapīṭisukkekaggatāsahitam paṭhamajjhānakusalacittam Vicārapīṭisukkekaggatāsahitam dutiyajjhāna-kusala cittam. Pīṭisukkekaggatāsahitam tatiyajjhāna kusalacittam Sukkekaggatāsahitam catutthajjhānakusalacittam Upekkhekaggatāsahitam pancamajjhānakusalacittam ceti imāni pañca pi rūpāvacarakusalacittāni nāma

2 'Resultant consciousness of the second stage of *Jhāna*, with *Vicāra*, *Pīti*, *Sukha* and *Ekaggatā*

3 'Resultant consciousness of the third stage of *Jhāna*, with *Pīti*, *Sukha* and *Ekaggatā*

4 'Resultant consciousness of the fourth stage of *Jhāna*, with *Sukha* and *Ekaggatā*

5 'Resultant consciousness of the fifth stage of *Jhāna*, with *Upekkhā* and *Ekaggatā*' (XVIII)

(c)

### §21 Kīryā (inoperative)

An Arihat also obtains these stages of *Jhāna*, but, they do not yield *Vipāka*. They are *Kīryā* or inoperative.

Hence there are five types of *Rūpāvacara Kīryā* consciousness, corresponding to the five *Kusala* ones —

1 'Inoperative consciousness of the first stage of *Jhāna* with *Vitakka* (applying the mind on the object of meditation), *Vicāra* (sustaining the mind on the object), *Pīti* (a thrill of pleasant sensation), *Sukha* (ease), and *Ekaggatā* (one-pointedness).

2 'Inoperative consciousness of the second stage of *Jhāna*, with *Vicāra*, *Pīti*, *Sukha* and *Ekaggatā*

3 'Inoperative consciousness of the third stage of *Jhāna*, with *Pīti*, *Sukha* and *Ekaggatā*

4 'Inoperative consciousness of the fourth stage of *Jhāna*, with *Sukha* and *Ekaggatā*

---

XVIII Vitakkavicārapīṭusukhekaggatāsahitam paṭhamajjhānavipākacittam Vicārapīṭusukhekaggatāsahitam dutiyajjhānavipākacittam Pīṭusukhekaggatāsahitam tatiyajjhānavipākacittam Sukhekaggatāsahitam catutthajjhānavipākacittam Upekkhekaggatāsahitam pañcamajjhānavipākacittam ceti imāni pañca pi rūpāvacaravipākacittāni nāma

5 'Inoperative consciousness of the fifth stage of *Jhāna*, with *Upekkhā*, and *Ekaggatā* (XIX a)

§22 *Types of Rūpāvacara consciousness summed up* —

'Thus there are altogether fifteen types of *Rūpāvacara* moral, resultant and inoperative consciousness' (XIX b)

'There are five types of *Rūpāvacara* consciousness according to the stages of *Jhāna*. According to moral, resultant and inoperative types of consciousness, they are altogether fifteen in number' (XX)

(B)

*Arūpāvacara Citta*

(*JHĀNA*—consciousness of the formless)

The types of *Arūpāvacara* consciousness are also of three kinds, namely, (a) moral (*Kusala*), (b) resultant (*Vipākā*), and inoperative (*Kiriyā*)

(a)

§23 *Kusala (moral)*

The *Yogāvacara*, intending to rise higher in the field of *Jhāna*, gives up the *Rūpa Kammatthāna* of the *Rūpāvacara*, and obtains *Jhāna* one by one on the four *Arūpas* (formless), namely—(1) *Ananta Ākāsa* (infinity of space), (2) *Ananta Viññāna* (infinity of consciousness), (3) *Ākiñcāñña* (nothingness) and (4) *Nevasaññā Nāsaññā* (a state in which cogni-

XIX (a) Vitakkaṇīcārapitisukkekaggatāsahitam pathamajjhāna-kriyācittam Vicārapitisukkekaggatāsahitam dutiyajjhāna-kriyācittam Pitusukkekaggatāsahitam tatiyajjhānakriyācittam, Sukkekaggatāsahitam catutthajjhānakriyācittam Upekkhekaggatāsahitam pañcamajjhānakriyācittam ceti imāni pañca pī rūpāvacarakriyācittāni nāma

(b) Icevā sabbathā pī pañnarasa rūpāvacarakusalavipākakriyācittāni samattāni

XX Pañcadhā jhānabhedena rūpāvacaramānasam,  
Puññāpakakriyābhedā tam pañcadasadhā bhāve

tion is so extremely subtle that it cannot be said whether it is or not) These stages of *Jhāna* are called *Arūpāvacara Citta* or consciousness of the formless

There are only two factors in these stages, namely, *Upekkhā* and *Ekaggatā*, therefore, they really belong to the fifth stage of *Jhāna*. They differ from one another in *Kammatthānas* only, not in factors. There is no *Anga-Samatikkamana* (gradual suppression of factors one by one), as in the *Rūpāvacara*, but there is an *Ālambana-Samatikkamana* (giving up the objects of meditation one by one)

Hence there are four types of the *Arūpāvacara Kusalā* consciousness, obtaining *Jhāna* on the above four formless objects —

1 'Moral *Jhāna*-consciousness dwelling on the **infinity of space**

2 'Moral *Jhāna*-consciousness dwelling on the **infinity of consciousness**

3. 'Moral *Jhāna*-consciousness dwelling on **nothingness**

4 'Moral *Jhāna*-consciousness **wherein cognition is so extremely subtle, that it cannot be said whether it is or is not**' (XXI)

(b)

§24 *Vipāka (resultant)*

There are four types of the resultant *Jhāna* consciousness of the formless, corresponding to the above moral ones —

---

XXI *Ākāśānañcāyatanakusalacittam Viññānañcāyatana-kusalacittam Ākūṭicāññāyatanakusalacittam Nevasaññānāsaññāyatanakusalacittam ceti imāni cattāni pi arūpāvacarakusalacittāni nāma.*

1 'Resultant *Jhāna*-consciousness dwelling on the **infinity of space**

2 'Resultant *Jhāna*-consciousness dwelling on the **infinity of consciousness**

3 'Resultant *Jhāna*-consciousness dwelling on **nothingness**

4 'Resultant *Jhāna*-consciousness **wherein cognition is so extremely subtle, that it cannot be said whether it is or is not**' (XXII)

(c)

#### §25 *Kiriyā* (inoperative)

The *Aīhat* obtains these types of *Jhāna*-consciousness of the formless, but they yield no *Vipāka*. They are *Kiriyā* or inoperative.

'These are the four types of inoperative *Jhāna*-consciousness of the formless —

1 'Inoperative *Jhāna*-consciousness dwelling on the **infinity of space**

2 'Inoperative *Jhāna* consciousness dwelling on the **infinity of consciousness**

3 'Inoperative *Jhāna*-consciousness dwelling on **nothingness**

4 'Inoperative *Jhāna*-consciousness **wherein cognition is so extremely subtle, that it cannot be said**

---

XXII Ākāśānañcāyatanavipākacittam Viññānañcāyatana-  
vipākacittam Ākūcaññāyatanavipākacittam Nevasaññānāsaññā-  
yatanavipākacittam ceti imāni cattāri pi arūpāvacaravipākacittāni  
nāma.

**whether it is or is not** ' (XXIII a)

§26 *Types of Arūpa-consciousness summed up*

'Thus there are altogether twelve moral, resultant, and inoperative types of consciousness of the formless'

(XXIIIb)

'According to the objects of *Jhāna*, there are four types of consciousness of the formless. Again, according to moral, resultant, and inoperative types, they are altogether twelve in number' (XXIV)

---

XXIII(a) Ākāsānañcāyatanakriyācittam Viññānañcāyatana-kriyācittam Ākiñcaññāyatanakriyācittam Nevasaññānāsaññāyatana-kriyācittañcetī imāni cattāni pi arūpāvacarakriyācittāni nāma

(b) Iccevaṃ sabbathā pi dvādaśa arūpāvacara-kusalavipākakriyācittāni samattāni

XXIV Ālambanappabhedena catudhāruppamānasam,  
Puññapākakriyābhedā puna dvādasadhā tītam



## SECTION IV

## LOKUTTARA CITTA

(Supra-mundane consciousness)

§27 *Introductory*

A being of the *Rūpa* or the *Arūpa* plane of life may, under the influence of ignorance (*Avijjā*), be led to think that it is an eternal and blissful state. He may thus create craving for life. His active *Jhāna*-consciousness will then yield resultant, as an effect of which, he will be born again after death.

He may be in the bondage of the following ten fetters—

(1) Ignorance of identity, (2) Doubt, (3) The wrong belief that external rituals lead to purity, (4) Sensuous desire, (5) Ill-will, (6) Attachment for *Rūpa*-existence, (7) Attachment for *Arūpa*-existence, (8) Conceit, (9) Distraction, (10) Nescience.

One, intending to get rid of them, meditates on *Anicca* (impermanent), *Dukkha* (miserable), and *Anatta* (substanceless) nature of all existence, and obtains *Jhāna* on *Nibbāna*.

Thereby, he succeeds in destroying the first three fetters and attains to the first stage of the Supra-mundane plane. He is called *Sotāpanna*, or 'one who has come in the stream leading to *Nibbāna*.' He is sure to become Arhat within the course of seven births.

When he succeeds in weakening the other two fetters, namely, sensuous desire and ill-will, he attains to the second stage of the Supra-mundane plane, and is called *Saka-*

*dāgāmī* or once-returner. After this he will be born only once in this world and attain *Nibbāna*.

When he succeeds in totally uprooting these two fetters he attains to the third stage of the Supra-mundane plane, and is called *Anāgāmī* or 'never returner', that is, one who will either obtain *Nibbāna* in this very life, or will be born in some higher plane and will there obtain *Nibbāna*.

When he destroys the remaining five fetters as well, he becomes an Arhat, who has fully realized the Summum Bonum, *Nibbāna*.

The moments of realising these stages are called *Maggā Citta* (Path-consciousness), and the moments of being conscious of the realisation are called *Phala-Citta* (Fruit-consciousness).

Hence there are altogether eight types of the *Lokuttara Citta* (Supra-mundane consciousness) —

§28 (a) *Maggā Citta*

These are the four types of the Supra-mundane moral consciousness —

- 1 'Consciousness belonging to the Path of **Stream-attainment**
- 2 'Consciousness belonging to the Path of **Once-returning**
- 3 'Consciousness belonging to the Path of **Never-returning**
- 4 'Consciousness belonging to the Path of **Arahantship**' (XXV)

---

XXV Sotāpattimaggacittam Sakadāgāmimaggacittam Anāgāmimaggā-cittam Arahattamaggacittam ceti imāni cattāni pi lokuttarakusalacittāni nāma

§29 (b) *Phala Citta*

‘These are the four types of Supra-mundane resultant consciousness —

- 1 ‘Consciousness belonging to the fruition of Stream-attainment
- 2 ‘Consciousness belonging to the fruition of Once-returning
- 3 ‘Consciousness belonging to the fruition of Never-returning
- 4 ‘Consciousness belonging to the fruition of Arahantship’ (XXVIa)

§30 *Types of Supra-mundane consciousness summed up*

‘Thus there are altogether eight moral and resultant types of Supra-mundane consciousness (XXVI b)

‘The four *Maggas* are the four types of Supra-mundane moral consciousness, and their fruition are the types of resultant consciousness. Therefore, there are altogether eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness’ (XXVII)

---

XXVI (a) Sotāpattuphalacittam Sakadāgāmi-phalacittam  
Anāgāmi-phalacittam Arahattaphalacittam ceti imāni cattāni pi  
lokuttaravipākacittāni nāma

(b) Iccevaṃ sabbathā pi aṭṭhalokuttarakusalavipākacittāni  
samattāni

XXVII Catummaggappabhedena catudhā kusalam tathā  
Pākam tassa phalattā ti aṭṭhadhānuttaram matam

## SECTION V

FINAL CALCULATION OF ALL THE  
TYPES OF CONSCIOUSNESS

## §31 One way of calculation

There are eighty-nine types of consciousness in all. They can be classified either as (A) immoral moral-resultant-inoperative, or as (B) *Kāmāvacara Rūpāvacara Arūpāvacara-Lokuttara*, both making the total of eighty-nine

## (A) Immoral moral-resultant-inoperative

‘There are twelve types of immoral [*Lobha* 8+*Dosa* 2+*Moha* 2], twenty-one types of moral [*Kāmāvacara* 8+*Rūpāvacara* 5+*Arūpāvacara* 4+*Lokuttara* 4=21], thirty six types of resultant [*Ahetuka* 15+*Kāmāvacara Sahetuka* 8+*Rūpāvacara* 5+*Arūpāvacara* 4+*Lokuttara Phala* 4=36], and twenty types of inoperative consciousness [*Ahetuka* 3+*Kāmāvacara Sahetuka* 8+*Rūpāvacara* 5+*Arūpāvacara* 4=20]’ (XXVIII)

(B) *Kāmāvacara-Rūpāvacara-Arūpāvacara-Lokuttara*

‘There are fifty-four types of *Kāmāvacara* [Immoral 12+*Ahetuka* 18+Moral 8+moral resultant 8+inoperative 8=54], fifteen types of *Rūpāvacara* [Moral 5+Resultant 5+Inoperative 5=15], twelve types of *Arūpāvacara* [Moral 4+Resultant 4+Inoperative 4=12], and eight types of *Lokuttara* consciousness [Path 4+Fruition 4=8], the total being the same as eighty-nine

## §32 Another way of calculation

‘The above eighty-nine types of consciousness can be

---

XXVIII Dvādasākusalāṇevam kusalāṇekaviśati,  
Chatunseva vipākāni kriyācittāni viśati

again calculated as **one hundred and twenty-one** types ' (XXIX)

'How are the eighty-nine types of consciousness calculated as one hundred and twenty-one ?

'*Sotāpatti-Magga*-consciousness can be subdivided into five types, as under

- 1 'Associated with the first stage of *Jhāna*
- 2 'Associated with the second stage of *Jhāna*
- 3 'Associated with the third stage of *Jhāna*
- 4 'Associated with the fourth stage of *Jhāna*
- 5 'Associated with the fifth stage of *Jhāna*

'Thus there will be five subdivisions in each of the *Sakā-dāgāmi-Magga*, *Anāgāmi-Magga* and *Arahatta-Magga* types of consciousness, amounting altogether to twenty types of *Magga*-consciousness

'In the similar manner [by subdividing each *Phala*-consciousness into five types], there will be twenty types of *Phala*-consciousness

'All of them, summed up together, make forty types of *Lokuttara* consciousness ' (XXX)

XXIX Catupaññāsadhā kāme rūpe pannarasīraye,  
Cittāni dvādasārūpe aṭṭhadhānuttare tathā  
Ithamekūnanavutippabbhedam pana mānasam,  
Ekavīsasatam vātha vibhajanti vicakkhanā

XXX Katham ekūnanavutividdham cittam ekavīsasatam hoti ?  
Vitakkavicārapītisukhekaggatāsahitam pathamajjhānasotāpattimag-  
gacittam Vicārapītisukhekaggatāsahitam dutiyajjhānasotāpattimag-  
gacittam Pītisukhekaggatāsahitam tatiyajjhānasotāpattimaggacittam  
Sukhekaggatāsahitam catutthajjhānasotāpattimaggacittam Upekkhe-  
kaggatāsahitam pañcamajjhānasotāpattimaggacittam ceti imāni  
pañca pi Sotāpattimaggacittāni nāma Tathā sakadāgāmimagga-  
anāgāmimagga-arahattamaggacittam ceti samavīsati maggacittāni  
Tathā phalacittāni ceti samacattāssa lokuttaracittāni bhavanti

No stages of the *Lokuttara* plane can be realised by a consciousness of the world of desires

To realise them, the consciousness must be steady, at least as much as in the first stage of *Jhāna*. It may be more, as in the second, the third, the fourth, or the fifth stages of *Jhāna*, at the time of realisation, the object of *Jhāna* being *Nibbāna* in all the cases

But it is not necessary that a man must practise Yoga and first develop the *Jhānas*. If he has a strong *Kusala-Vipāka*, he can directly start meditating on *Anicca*, *Dukkha* and *Anatta*, obtain *Jhāna* on *Nibbāna* and attain to the *Lokuttara* plane. Such a man is called *Sukkhā-Vipassaka* or 'one who has a day insight'

'The (eight) types of Supra-mundane consciousness become as many as forty, when each is subdivided into five, according to the factors of *Jhāna*, with which they are associated' (XXXIa)

The eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness being split up into forty, there is an increase of thirty-two in the total eighty-nine types of consciousness. Hence the types become altogether one hundred and twenty-one, as under—

<i>Akusala</i>	12
<i>Ahetuka</i>	18
<i>Kāmāvacara-Sobhana</i>	24
<i>Rūpāvacara</i>	15

---

XXXI (a) *Jhānangayogabhedenā katvekekam tu pañcadhā, Vuccatānuttaram cittaṃ cattālisa vidham ti ca*

<i>Arūpāvacara</i>	12
<i>Lokuttara</i>	40
	<hr/>
	121

§33 *Types of different Jhāna, calculated separately*

To calculate the types of the different Jhāna separately, we must remember the following two points —

(1) In *Rūpāvacara* consciousness, the object of Jhāna is one of the twenty-six objective *Kammatthānas* [Ch IX §2]. The five stages of Jhāna are obtained on the same *Kammatthāna*

They are obtained in the Supra-mundane plane as well, but, in it, instead of a *Kammatthāna*, the object of Jhāna is *Nibbāna*

(2) As we have seen above, there are only two factors in the *Arūpāvacara* Jhāna, namely, *Upekkhā* and *Ekaggatā*, which is but a type of the fifth stage of Jhāna. All the twelve types of *Arūpāvacara* consciousness are, therefore, considered as the fifth stage of Jhāna—

‘*Lokuttara* should be considered in the same manner as *Rūpāvacara* [i.e., there are five stages of Jhāna in both of them]

‘In the order of the Jhāna, *Arūpāvacara* should be considered as the fifth [having only the two factors, *Upekkhā* and *Ekaggatā*]

‘Hence the first four stages of Jhāna are each of eleven types but the last stage is of twenty-three’ (XXXIb)

---

XXXI (b) Yathā ca rūpāvacaram gayhatānuttaram tathā,  
 Pathamādyjhānabhede āruppam cāpi pañcame  
 Ekādasa-vidham tasmā pañhamādīkamīritam,  
 Jhānamekekamante tu tevisatvidham bhavē

The following chart will explain the above—

Jhāna	Rūpāvacara			Arūpāvacara			Lokuttara		Total
	Kusala	Vipāka	Kiriyā	Kusala	Vipāka	Kiriyā	Magga	Phala	
I Stage	1	1	1				4	4	11
II „	1	1	1				4	4	11
III „	1	1	1				4	4	11
IV „	1	1	1				4	4	11
V „	1	1	1	4	4	4	4	4	23

“There are thirty-seven types of moral [*Kāmāvacara* 8+*Rūpa* 5+*Arūpa* 4+*Lokuttara* 20=37], and fifty two types of resultant consciousness [*Ahetuka* 15+*Kāmāvacara Sahetuka* 8+*Rūpa* 5+*Arūpa* 4+*Lokuttara* 20=52]

‘Thus there are altogether one hundred and twenty-one types of consciousness’ (XXXI c)

XXXI(c) Sattatimsavidham puññam dvipaññāsavidham tathā  
Pākamiccāhu cittāni ekavīsasatam budhā



## CHAPTER II

### CETASIKA

(*Psychic factors*)

#### SECTION I

#### HOW MANY AND WHAT ARE THEY ?

##### §1 *Introductory*

A type of consciousness is not a simple unity. It is a complex of various psychic factors, called *Cetasika*. These factors constitute the type and exist in and with it.

For example, out of the 89 types of consciousness discussed in the previous chapter, the most simple ones are the *Cakkhu-Viññāna* (eye-consciousness), *Sota-Viññāna* (ear-consciousness), *Ghāna Viññāna* (nose-consciousness), *Jivhā-Viññāna* (tongue-consciousness) and *Kāya-Viññāna* (touch-consciousness), being pure sensations, unalloyed with any reflection over the object. But if we examine them minutely they are found to consist of as many as seven factors in them, namely, (1) *Phassa* (contact of the subject with the object), (2) *Vedanā* (the feeling of the subject that it has been affected by the object), (3) *Saññā* (marking the object), *Cetanā* (volition=inclining towards the object), (5) *Ekaggatā* (concentrating towards the object), (6) *Jīvitindriya* (psychic life) and (7) *Manasikāra* (attending to the object).

These seven factors arise simultaneously with the particular *Viññāna* (sensation), not one preceding the other. Their object is the same as that of the *Viññāna*, either visible, audible, olfactory, gustatory, tactual or ideal.

Their 'base' on which they originate is also the same as that of the *Viññāṇa*, either eye, ear, nose, tongue, body or heart \* With the cessation of the *Viññāṇa*, the factors also disappear

Such psychic-factors are altogether fifty-two in number that constitute the different types of consciousness in different permutation and combination The present chapter of the book discusses *which factors are present in which types, and which types consist of which factors* This will help us very much in determining the exact and definite character of the certain type of consciousness

'In consciousness, there are fifty-two psychic factors, called *Cetasika*, which arise together with it, on the same object and base, and pass away simultaneously with it' (I)

How ?

They are as follows —

(A)

### ĀÑÑASAMĀNA

*(The factors that may be found in any type of consciousness)*

§2 Sabba-Citta-Sādhāraṇa

*(Invariably common to all the types of consciousness)*

'The following seven *Cetasika* (psychic factors) are invariably common to all the types of consciousness —

1 Contact, 2 Feeling, 3 Marking the object,

---

\*It is interesting to note that the basis of consciousness, according to Abhidhamma, is heart and not brain

1 Ekuppādanurodhā ca ekālambanavatthukā

Cetoyuttā dvipaññāsa dhammā cetasikā matā

4 Volition, 5. Concentration, 6 Psychic life, 7 Attention ' (II)

*Phassa* is the 'contact' of the subject with the object, either material or ideational. There can be no consciousness without this primary factor.

*Vedanā*\* is the feeling of the subject that it has been affected either pleasantly, painfully or neutrally, and it is essentially found in all consciousness.

*Saññā*\* is 'making the appearance of the object' that makes it possible to recognise a thing. As it marks only the surface-appearance, without going into its intrinsic nature, it is often very deceptive, as in the case of an illusion. This factor, essentially present in every consciousness, links the present experience with the past.

*Cetanā* is the 'motiveless inclination' of the subject towards the object when a contact has taken place. In the moral or the immoral types of consciousness, this factor is called 'karma', either of the mind, or the speech, or the action. *Cetanā* is also thus an essential factor of every consciousness.

*Ekaggatā* is concentrating upon an object, it varies in strength in different moments of consciousness. In *Pañcadvārāvajjana* or *Cakkhu-Viññāna* it is very feeble, but in the *Jhāna* it is fully steady.

*Jīvitindriya* is the psychic principle which keeps a consciousness alive.

---

II Katham ? Phasso, Vedanā, Saññā, Cetanā, Ekaggatā, Jīvitindriyam, Manasikāro ceti sattime cetasikā sabbacittasādhāranā nāma

\**Vedanā* and *Saññā* have been treated as independent aggregates (*Khandha*). The remaining fifty factors are included in the *Samkhāra Khandha* or the aggregate of the mental tendencies.

*Manasikāra* is paying heed to the object, which must be present in every consciousness

### §3 *Pakinnaka*

(Factors that may be found commonly in any class of consciousness)

‘The following six *Cetasika* may be found in any class— (1) applying the mind on the object (*Vitakka*) (2), sustaining the mind on the object (*Vicāra*), (3) belief (*Adhimokkha*), (4) energy (*Viriya*), (5) a thrill of pleasant sensation (*Pīti*) and (6) an urge to do (*Chanda*)’ (III a)

These six factors may be commonly present in all the classes of consciousness, but not in all the types

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

*Vitakka* is the initial application of the mind on the object, and *Vicāra* is sustaining the mind on it. According to Sutta, these two factors always go together, but Abhidhamma holds that *Vicāra* can be separated from *Vitakka*. In the second stage of *Jhāna*, according to Abhidhamma, *Vitakka* is excluded, and *Vicāra* exists independent of it. They differ in strength in different types of consciousness. In the *Jhāna*, they are the strongest. They are present both in the moral and the immoral types.

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

*Adhimokkha* is the belief in the object. No activity, either good or bad, is possible without a belief in it, irrespective of whether it is true or totally illusive.

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

---

III (a) *Vitakko, Vicāro, Adhimokkho, Viriyam, Pīti, Chando*  
cā ti cha ime cetasikā pakinnakā nāma

*Viriya* is the energy to do an act

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

*Piṭh* is a thrill of pleasant sensation which may be experienced both in the moral and the immoral types of consciousness. A greedy man may get it when he has won a big prize in a lottery, and a philanthropist may get it when he has rescued a man from difficulties. It differs in strength in different types of consciousness and in different persons

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

*Chanda* is an urge to do

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

‘Thus, these thirteen factors [invariably found 7+common to all the classes 6=13] are present in all the classes of consciousness’ (IIIB)

(B)

#### §4 *Akusala Cetasika*

‘The following fourteen factors are immoral—(1) Dullness and deception (2) Impudence (3) Shamelessness (4) Distraction (5) Greed (6) False view (7) Conceit (8) Hate (9) Envy (10) Jealousy (11) Worry (12) Sloth (13) Torpor (14) Perplexity’ (IV)

These factors are present in the immoral types of consciousness

(C)

#### §5 *Sobhana Cetasika*

(*Good Psychic factors*)

Factors that are found in good types of consciousness

III (b) *Fvamate terasa cetasikā aññasamānā ti veditabbā*

IV *Moho, Ahirikam, Anottappam, Uddhaccam, Lobho, Diṭṭhi, Māno, Doso, Issā, Macchariyam, Kukkuccam, Thīnam, Middham, Vicikicchā ceti cuddasme cetasikā akusalā nāma*

are called *Sobhana*. They are altogether twenty-five in number, and have been classified under four heads, namely—(i) factors that are essentially present in all the types of good consciousness, (ii) abstinences, (iii) illimitables and (iv) reason as the guiding principle

(1)

*Factors that are essentially present in all  
the types of good consciousness*

'The following nineteen factors are essentially present in all the types of 'good' consciousness — (1) faith, (2) mindfulness, (3) prudence, (4) shame, (5) self sacrificingness, (6) good-will, (7) balance of mind, (8) calmness of the psychic factors, (9) calmness of mind, (10) buoyancy of the psychic factors, (11) buoyancy of mind, (12) pliancy of the psychic factors, (13) pliancy of mind, (14) fitness of work of the psychic factors, (15) fitness of work of mind, (16) proficiency of the psychic factors, (17) proficiency of mind, (18) rectitude of the psychic factors and (19) rectitude of mind ' (V)

*Lobha*, *Dosa* and *Moha* have a blinding and agitating influence upon the person, under which he loses his self-consciousness and the reasoning faculty. He forgets himself, and feels stiff.

Quite opposed to that, in a 'good' consciousness, the subject is fully awake and mindful. Calmness (*Passaddhi*),

---

V. *Saddhā*, *Sati*, *Hiri*, *Ottappam*, *Alobho*, *Adoso*, *Tatramajjhataṭṭā*, *Kāyapassaddhi*, *Cittapassaddhi*, *Kāyalahutā*, *Cittalahutā*, *Kāyamudutā*, *Cittamudutā*, *Kāyakammaññatā*, *Cittakammaññatā*, *Kāyapāguṇñatā*, *Cittapāguṇñatā*, *Kāyujjukatā*, *Cittujjukatā*, *ceti ekūnavasatim cetasikā sobhanasādhāranā nāma*.

buoyancy (*Lahutā*), pliancy (*Mudutā*), fitness of work (*Kammaññatā*), proficiency (*Pāguññatā*) and rectitude (*Ujukatā*) of the mind and mental factors prove that the types of 'good' consciousness are light, calm and peaceful

(11)

*Viratī (abstinences)*

'There are three abstinenccs, namely, (1) right speech (abstaining from false speech), (2) right action (abstaining from false action) and (3) right livelihood (abstaining from false livelihood)' (VI)

It will be seen that these three factors have been taken from the Noble Eight-fold Path. But why have the remaining five been left out?

The Noble Eight-fold Path consists of (1) right view, (2) right aspiration, (3) right speech, (4) right action, (5) right livelihood, (6) right endeavour, (7) right mindfulness and (8) right concentration.

Of these, the last one, 'right concentration,' is the same as *Ekaggatā* (concentration) of the five stages of *Jhāna*, which has been already included in the group called *Sabbacitta-Sādhāraṇa*.

The seventh, 'right mindfulness', has been included in the group called *Sobhana-Sādhāraṇa*.

The sixth, 'right endeavour', is nothing but a kind of *Vīrya* (energy) which has been included in the group called *Pakinnaka*.

The second, 'right aspiration', is but a kind of *Vitakka*

---

VI Sammā-Vācā, Sammā-Kammanto, Sammā-Ājivo ceti tisso viratiyo nāma

(applying the mind on the object), which has been included in the group above

The first, 'right view', is the same as *Paññindriya* (reason), which itself forms the fourth head under *Sobhana Cetasika*

Hence, the present group has been formed only with the remaining three factors

(iii)

*Illimitables (appamaññā)*

'Compassion' (over the grief of others) and 'joy' (on the prosperity of others) are the two illimitables' (VIIa)

They are called illimitables, because they are spread over all the innumerable beings of the universe

They have been taken from the four-fold Brahma Vihāra. The other two, namely, *Mettā* (friendliness) and *Upekkhā* (equilibrium of mind), have been already included in the group *Sobhana-Sādhārāna*, as *Adosa* (good-will) and *Tatra-Majjhataiā* (balance of mind) respectively

(iv)

*Reason (Paññindriya)*

*Paññindriya* or 'reason as-a-guiding-principle,' is a psychic factor which is present only in those types of consciousness that are very much thoughtful, having 'reason' as the guiding principle

---

VII (a,b) *Karunā-Muditā pana appamaññāyo nāmā ti sabbathā pi paññindriyena saddhim pañcavīsatiṃ cetasikā sobhanā ti veditabbā*



‘Including ‘reason’ also as a factor, there are altogether twenty-five good psychic factors [common to all the types of good consciousness 19 + abstinences 3 + illimitables 2 + Reason 1=25]’ (VII b)

#### ALL THE PSYCHIC FACTORS SUMMED UP

‘*Aññasamāna* factors are thirteen [*Sabbacitta Sādhāraṇa* 7 + *Pakinnaka* 6 = 13], immoral ones are fourteen, and the good ones are twenty-five. Hence they are altogether fifty-two in number’ (VIII)

---

#### VIII Ettāvatā ca—

Terasaññasamānā ca cuddasākusalā tathā,  
Sobhanā pañcaviśā ti dvipaññāsa pavuccare.

## SECTION 2

WHAT FACTORS ARE PRESENT IN WHICH  
TYPES OF CONSCIOUSNESS ?§ 6 *Introductory*

‘Seven factors are present in all the types The *Pakinnakas* are present occasionally wherever possible the fourteen take place only in the immoral and the good factors only in the good types of consciousness’ (IX)

## HOW DOES IT OCCUR ?

§7 *Sobba Citta-Sādhāraṇa*

(*Factors that are common to all the types*)

‘The group of seven factors, called *Sabba-Citta-Sādhāraṇa*, is present in all the eighty-nine types of consciousness’ (X)

§8 *Pakinnaka*

(*Factors that are commonly present in all the  
classes of consciousness*)

‘Among the group of (six) factors that are present occasionally wherever possible —

## I

‘*Vitakka* (applying the mind on the object) is present in all the types of *Kāmāvacara* consciousness, with the exception of twice five-fold *Viññāna* (sensation), and in the

IX Tesam cittāvīyuttānam yathāyogamīto param,  
Cittupādesu paccekam sampayogo pavuccati  
Satta sabbattha yujjanti yathāyogam pakinnakā,  
Cuddasākusalesveva sobhanesveva sobhanā

X Katham ? Sabbacittasādhāraṇā tāva satta cetasikā sabbesu pi  
ekūnanavuticittupādesu labbhanti

eleven types of consciousness of the first stage of *Jhāna*. Thus, it is found altogether in fifty-five types' (XIa)

Eye-consciousness, ear-consciousness, nose consciousness, tongue-consciousness, and touch-consciousness, these are the five *Viññānas*. They are altogether ten in number, five being the resultant of previous good karma, and five being the resultant of previous bad karma [Ch I § 2]. They are pure sensation, unalloyed with reflection. *Vitakka*, therefore, cannot be present in them.

Except these ten, *Vitakka* is present in the remaining forty-four types of *Kāmāvacara* consciousness, namely—

<i>Akusala</i>	12
<i>Ahetuka</i> (except the ten <i>Viññāna</i> )	8
<i>Kusala</i> + <i>Vipāka</i> + <i>Kiriyā</i>	24
	—
	44

It is present also in the eleven types of consciousness of the first stage of *Jhāna*, namely—

<i>Rūpāvacara</i> ( <i>Kusala</i> + <i>Vipāka</i> + <i>Kiriyā</i> )	3
<i>Lokuttara</i>	8
	—
	11

As *Vitakka* is excluded in the second stage of *Jhāna*, it is not present in the stages of *Jhāna* higher than the first.

Thus, it is found altogether 44+11=55 types of consciousness.

---

XI (a) Pakinnakesu pana vitakko tāva dvipaṇcaviññānavajjitatāmāvacaracittesu ceva ekādasasu pathamajjhānacittesu ceti pañcapaññāsacittesu uppajjati

## II

'*Vicāra* (sustaining the mind on the object) is present in all the above fifty-five types of consciousness, and also in the eleven types of consciousness of the second stage of *Jhāna*. Thus, it is found in altogether  $55 + 11 = 66$  types' (XIb)

*Vicāra* is excluded in the third stage of *Jhāna*. Therefore, it is not found in the stages of *Jhāna* higher than the second

## III

'*Adhimokkha* (belief) is present in all the types of consciousness, except the twice five-fold *Viññāna* and the type of perplexed consciousness' (XI c)

Belief is not possible in the type of perplexed consciousness, it being full of doubts. It is not present in the *Viññāna* also, as it is only a sensation, and therefore too premature for this factor to arise.

Except these  $10 + 1 = 11$  types of consciousness, *Adhimokkha* is found in altogether  $89 - 11 = 78$  types.

## IV

'*Viriya* (energy) is present in all the types of consciousness, except *Pañca-Dvārāvajjana* [1], twice five-fold *Viññāna* [10], *Sampticchana* [2] and *Santīrana* [3] [=16]' (XI d)

*Viriya* (energy) is not present in 16 types of consciousness, as shown above, because they are too feeble to be

---

(b) *Vicāro pana tesu ceva ekādasasu dutiyajjhānacittesu ceti chasatthacittesu jāyati*

(c) *Adhimokkho dvipaṇcaviññānavicikicchāvajjitacittesu*

(d) *Viriyam pañcadvārāvajjana-dvipaṇcaviññāna-sampaticchana-santīranavajjitacittesu*

## VI

‘*Chanda* (an urge to do) is present in all the types of consciousness, except in the *Ahetuka* [18] and the confused types [+2=20]’ (XI<sup>f</sup>)

Hence it is found in  $89 - (18 + 2) = 69$  types

## SUMMARY

Here, a summary of the above is given by Anuuddhacariya in two stanzas. The first shows in how many types of consciousness the factors are *absent*, and the second shows in how many types they are *present*.

In considering *Adhimokkha*, *Viriya* and *Chanda*, the total of the types of consciousness is taken to be eighty-nine only, according to the first way of calculation, for, they are not the essential constituents of *Jhāna*. It is only in considering Jhānic constituents—*Vitakka*, *Vicāra* and *Pīti*—that the total of the types of consciousness is taken to be one hundred and twenty-one, according to the second way of calculation.

‘They [*Vitakka*, *Vicāra*, *Adhimokkha*, *Viriya*, *Pīti* and *Chanda*] are absent respectively in sixty-six, fifty-five, eleven, sixteen, seventy, and twenty types of consciousness.

‘And, they are present respectively in fifty-five, sixty-six, seventy-eight, seventy-three, fifty-one, and sixty-nine types of consciousness’ (XII)

---

(f) Chando ahetuka-momūhavaṃṇitacittesu labbhati

XII Te pana cittuppādā yathākkamam—

Chasaṭṭhi pañcapaññāsa ekādasā ca solasa,

Sattati visati ceva pakinnakavivaṃṇitā

*Vitakka* is absent in sixty-six [twice five-fold *Viññāna* 10+second stage of *Jhāna* 11+third stage of *Jhāna* 11+fourth stage of *Jhāna* 11+fifth stage of *Jhāna* 23=66] , and present in fifty-five [*Akusala* 12+*Ahetuka*, except the twice five-fold *Viññāna* 8+*Kāmāvacara Sobhana* 24+*Rūpa* 3+*Lokuttara* 8=55] types of consciousness

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

*Vicāra* is absent in fifty-five [twice five-fold *Viññāna* 10+third stage of *Jhāna* 11+fourth stage of *Jhāna* 11+fifth stage of *Jhāna* 23=55] and present in sixty-six [*Akusala* 12+*Ahetuka* except the twice five-fold *Viññāna* 8+*Kāmāvacara Sobhana* 24+*Rūpa*, the first and the second stages of *Jhāna* 6+*Lokuttara* 16=66] types of consciousness

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

*Adhmokkha* is absent in eleven [perplexed type of consciousness 1+twice five-fold *Viññāna* 10=11], and present in all the rest, 89-11=78 types of consciousness

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

*Viriya* is absent in sixteen [*Pañcadārāvajjana* 1+twice five-fold *Viññāna* 10 + *Samāpaticchana* 2 + *Santīraṇa* 3=16], and present in all the rest, 89-16=73 types of consciousness

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

*Pīti* is absent in seventy [*Domassa-Sahagata* 2 + *Upekkhā-Sahagata* 55 + *Kāya-Viññāna* 2 + the fourth stage

of *Jhāna* 11=70], and present in all the rest, 121-70=51 types of consciousness

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

*Chanda* is absent in twenty [*Ahetuka* 18 + *Momūha* 2=20], and present in all the rest, 89-20=69 types of consciousness

### §9 *Akusala* (immoral factors)

(a)

‘Among the immoral psychic-factors, (1) *Moha* (dullness and deception), (2) *Ahīka* (Shamelessness), (3) *Anotappa* (impudence) and (4) *Uddhacca* (distraction) are essentially common to all the twelve types of immoral consciousness’ (XIII a)

Due to *Moha*, a man gets desire and attachment for the things of the world, loses discrimination and reason, creates greed and hate, and commits all kinds of immoral deeds. It is the source of all evils, and an essential factor of all the types of immoral consciousness

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

As long as a man has prudence and ‘shame from committing a bad deed’, he will not do it. Imprudence and shamelessness are, therefore, essential factors of all immoral types

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

A man does not commit a bad deed when he is calm and sober. It is only in a distracted and unbalanced

---

XIII (a) *Akusalesu pana Moho, Ahīkam, Anottappam Uddhaccam ceti cattārome cetasikā sabbākusalasādhāranā nāma Sabbesu pi dvādasākusalesu labbhanti*

state of mind that an immorality is committed. Therefore, *Uddhacca* or distraction is also found in all immoral consciousness.

These four factors—*Moha*, *Ahīrika*, *Anotappa*, *Uddhacca*—are called *Sabbākusala-Sādhāraṇa* or ‘factors common to all the types of immoral consciousness’.

(b)

‘*Lobha* (greed) is present only in the eight types of immoral consciousness that are accompanied by it’ (XIII b)

(c)

‘*Diṭṭhi* (false view) is present in the four types of *Lobha*-consciousness accompanied by it. *Māna* (conceit) may be occasionally present in the other four types of *Lobha*-consciousness unaccompanied by *Diṭṭhi* (XIII c)

*Lobha*-consciousness is either accompanied by *Diṭṭhi* (false view) or, sometimes, by *Māna* (conceit). Where it is under the influence of a misguided principle, it is *Diṭṭhi-Gata-Sampayutta* or accompanied by a false view. Sometimes, on the other hand, there is no such dependence upon a *Diṭṭhi*, but, it results in a bold independent gratification of the self. In this case it is accompanied by *Māna* or ‘conceit’.

(d)

‘*Dosa* (hate), *Issā* (envy), *Macchariya* (jealousy) and

---

(b) *Lobho atthaṣu lobha sahaṅga cittaṣveva labbhati*

(c) *Diṭṭhi catusu diṭṭhigatasampayuttesu Māno catusu diṭṭhigata-vippayuttesu*



*Kukkucca* (worry) are present in the two types of enaged consciousness' (XIII d)

*Issā* is to burn with envy at the prosperity of others

*Macchariya* is the feeling of intolerance that a man gets at the sight of others deriving benefit from what belongs to him, even though he suffers no loss thereby

*Kukkucca* is anger upon oneself. A man may even commit suicide if this factor is strong in him

It should be noted that *Issā*, *Macchariya* and *Kukkucca* cannot be simultaneously present in the same consciousness

(e)

'*Thīnā* (sloth) and *Middha* (torpor) are present in the five hesitated or instigated (*Sasankhārika*) types of immoral consciousness [*Lobba* 4 + *Dosa* 1=5]' (XIII e)

(f)

'*Vīkicchā* (perplexity) is present in only one type of consciousness accompanied by it' (XIII f)

#### RECAPITULATION

'Fourteen factors are present in the twelve types of immoral consciousness in the following five divisions —

- (i) 'Four factors [*Moha*, *Ahūrka*, *Anotappa* and *Uddhacca*] are present essentially in all the types
- (ii) 'Three factors [*Lobha*, *Diṭṭhi* and *Māna*] are present in the types of consciousness, rooted in *Lobha*

(d) *Doso*, *Issā*, *Macchariyam*, *Kukkuccam* ca dviṣu paṭighacittesu

(e) *Thīnam*, *middham* pañcasu sasankhārikacittesu

(f) *Vīkicchā* vīkicchāsahagatacittē yeva labbhati ti

- (iii) 'Four factors [*Dosa*, *Issā*, *Macchariya* and *Kukkucca*] are present in the types of consciousness rooted in *Dosa*
- (iv) 'Two factors [*Thiṇa* and *Middha*] are present in the types of consciousness, either hesitated or instigated
- (v) '*Vicikicchā* (perplexity) is present only in the one type of consciousness, accompanied by it' (XIV)

§10 *Sobhana Cetasika* (good psychic factors)

(a)

'Among the good factors —

'The nineteen *Sobhana-Sādhārana* are present in all the fifty-nine types of good consciousness' (XV a)

(b)

'All the three abstinences [right-speech, right-action, and right-livelihood] are present together, in full fruition, in the types of Supra-mundane consciousness. Among the mundane ones, they are found only in the *Kāmāvacara Kusala* types, and that also occasionally and separately' (XV b)

The three abstinences arise as psychic factors in our

XIV Sabbāpuññesu cattāro lobhamūle tayo gatā,  
Dosaṃmūlesu cattāro sasankhāre dvayan tathā  
Vicikicchā vicikicchācette ceti cuddasa,  
Dvādasākusalesveva sampayujjanti pañcadhā

XV(a) Sobhanesu pana sobhanasādhārana tāva ekūnavasati  
cetasikā sabbesu pi ekūnasatthisobhanacittesu samvujjanti

(b) Viratiyo pana tisso pi lokuttaracittesu sabbathā pi niyatā ekato  
va labbhanti Lokiyesu pana kāmāvacarakusalesveva kadāci sandissanti  
visum visum

consciousness when we succeed in withstanding the temptation of false speech, false action, or false livelihood. They do not come all at once, but separately and occasionally

(c)

‘The illimitables (*Appamaññāyo*) take place occasionally and separately in the following twenty-eight types of consciousness —

‘ <i>Mahaggata</i> types of consciousness, with the exception of the (fifteen) types of the fifth stage of <i>Jhāna</i>	—	12
‘ <i>Kāmāvacarā</i> <i>Kusala</i>	—	8
‘ <i>Sahetuka Kāmāvacara Kiriya</i>	—	8
		28

‘Some are of opinion that the two illimitables *Karunā* and *Muditā*—cannot exist in the types of consciousness accompanied by *Upekkhā*’ (XV c)

*Karunā* is to feel compassion over the miseries of others, and *Muditā* is to feel joyous on the prosperity of others. They are called *Appamaññā* (illimitables=boundless), because they flow over the innumerable beings of the universe. They come as psychic factors in our consciousness occasionally and separately, for, it is not possible to have the two feelings both at the same moment.

The *Mahaggata* types of consciousness are altogether twenty-seven [*Rūpāvacara* 15+*Arūpāvacara* 12=27]. Among

---

(c) *Appamaññāyo pana dvādasasu pañcamajjhānavajjita-mahaggatācittesu ceva kāmāvacarakusalesu ca sahetukakāmāvacara-kriyācittesu ceti aṭṭhaviśaticittesveva kadāci nānā hutvā jāyanti Upekkhā-sahagatesu panettha karunāmuditā na santi ti keci vadanti*

them, fifteen are the types of the fifth stage of *Jhāna* [*Rūpa* 3 + *Arūpa* 12 = 15], which are accompanied by *Upekkhā* or indifference, and, therefore, there cannot be *Karunā* and *Muditā* in them

(d)

‘Reason is present, as a psychic factor, in forty-seven types of consciousness, as under,

‘ <i>Nāna-Sampayutta Kāmāvacara</i> , (moral, resultant and inoperative)	12
‘ <i>Mahaggata</i> + <i>Lokuttara</i>	35
	—
	47 (XV d)

### RECAPITULATION

‘The good (*Sobhana*) factors exist only in the good (*sobhana*) types of consciousness in the following four divisions —

- (i) ‘Nineteen factors (*Sobhana-Sādhāraṇa*) in all the fifty-nine types of good consciousness
- (ii) ‘Three factors (right-speech, right-action and right-livelihood) in sixteen types of good consciousness [*Kāmāvacara Kusala* 8 + *Lokuttara* 8 = 16]
- (iii) ‘Two factors [*Karunā* and *Muditā*] in twenty eight types [*Mahaggata*, except the fifth stage of *Jhāna* 12 + *Kāmāvacara Kusala* 8 + *Sahetuka Kāmāvacara Kīryā* 8 = 28]

---

(d) Paññā pana dvādasasu nānasampayuttakāmāvacaracittesu ceva sabbesu pañcatimamahaggatalokuttaracittesu ceu sattacattālissacittesu sampayogam gacchati ti

- (iv) 'Paññā exists, in forty-seven types [*Nāna-Sampayutta Kāmāvacara* 12 + *Mahaggata* 27 + *Lokuttara* 8=47]' (XVI)

---

XVI Ekūnavīsati dhammā jāyantekūnasatṭhīsu,  
 Tayo solasacittesu atthavīsatiyan dvayaṃ  
 Paññā pakāsītā sattacattālīsavidhesu pi,  
 Sampayuttā catuddhevaṃ sobhanesveva sobhanā

## SECTION III

WHAT TYPES OF CONSCIOUSNESS HAVE  
WHAT AND HOW MANY FACTORS ?

## §11 Preliminary

'*Issā* (envy), *Maccharya* (jealousy), *Kukkucca* (worry and remorse), *Virati* (the three abstinences), the two illimitables, and *Māna* (conceit)—these (nine) factors, come **separately and occasionally**

'*Thīna* (sloth) and *Middha* (torpor) always come together whenever they come at all

'The remaining factors [ $52 - (9 + 2) = 41$ ] have their own fixed places as shown above. Herein we are going to discuss about their different combinations in the types of consciousness' (XVII)

'There are five possible combinations of them —

- (i) 'Thirty-six factors combine in the types of Supramundane consciousness.
- (ii) 'Thirty-five factors combine in the types of *Mahaggata* consciousness
- (iii) 'Thirty-eight factors combine in the types of *Kāmāvacara* good consciousness
- (iv) 'Twenty-seven factors combine in the types of immoral consciousness

---

XVII *Issā-Macchera-Kukkucca-Virati Karunādayo*  
*Nānā kadāci māno ca thūnamuddham tathā saha*  
*Yathāvuttānusārena sesā niyatayogino,*  
*Saṅgaham ca pavakkhāmi tesā dāni yathāraham*

- (v) 'Twelve factors combine in the *Ahetuka* types of consciousness' (XVIII)

### HOW ?

#### I

#### §12 *Factors that combine in the types of Supra-mundane consciousness*

Factors, combining in the types of Supra-mundane consciousness, are considered under five heads —

- (a) Factors combining in the eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness accompanied by the *first stage* of *Jhāna*
- (b) Factors combining in the eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness accompanied by the *second stage* of *Jhāna*
- (c) Factors combining in the eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness accompanied by the *third stage* of *Jhāna*
- (d) Factors combining in the eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness accompanied by the *fourth stage* of *Jhāna*
- (e) Factors combining in the eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness accompanied by the *fifth stage* of *Jhāna*

'Among the types of Supra-mundane consciousness —

---

XVIII Chatunsānuttare dhammā pañcatunsa mahaggate,  
Aṭṭhatunsaṇi labbhanti kāmāvacarasobhane  
Sattavisatyaṇiṇi dvādasāhetuke ti ca,  
Yathāsambhavayogena pañcadhā tattha sangaho

(a)

‘Thirty-six factors combine in the eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness accompanied by the first stage of *Jhāna*, as follows —

*Aññasamāna* [*Sabbacitta-Sādhārana*

7+ *Pakinnaka* 6] . 13

Good factors, except the illimitables [25—2]

23

---

36 (XIX a)

*Karunā* and *Muditā*, these two illimitables, have as their object of reflection ‘beings’ of the universe. They cannot, therefore, come in the above types of Supra-mundane consciousness that have *Nibbāna* as their object of *Jhāna*.

(b)

‘The same factors, as above, combine in the eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness accompanied by the second stage of *Jhāna*, with the exception of *Vitakka*’ (XIX b)

*Vitakka* is excluded in the second stage of *Jhāna* therefore, it is not present in the above types. Hence, there are only 36—1=35 factors in them

(c)

‘In the eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness

---

XIX (a) Katham ? Lokuttaresu tāva atthasu paṭhamajjhānikacittesu aññasamānā terasa cetasikā, appamaññāvaṇṇitā tevīsatu sobhanacetasikā ceti chaṭṭimsa dhammā sangaham gacchanti

(b) Tathā dutiyajjhānikacittesu vitakkavajjā



accompanied by the *third stage* of *Jhāna Vitakka* and *Vicāra*, these two factors, are excluded ' (XIX c)

Hence, there are only  $36 - 2 = 34$  factors in them

(d)

In the eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness accompanied by the *fourth stage* of *Jhāna Vitakka*, *Vicāra* and *Pīti*, these three factors are excluded, (XIX d)

Hence, there are only  $36 - 3 = 33$  factors in them

(e)

'In the eight types of Supra-mundane consciousness accompanied by the *fifth stage* of *Jhāna* there are as many factors as above, with *Upekkhā* (instead of *Sukha*) (XIX e)

'Thus, the factors, combining in the types of Supra-mundane consciousness, have been considered under the above five heads ' (XIX f)

#### RECAPITULATION

'In the types of Supra-mundane consciousness the factors have five sets of combinations, as follows —

(1) 'Thirty-six factors [combining in the first stage of *Jhāna*]

(2) 'Thirty-five factors [combining in the second stage of *Jhāna*]

---

(c) *Tatīyajjhānikacittesu vitakka.vicāravajjā*

(d) *Catutthajjhānikacittesu vitakkavicārapītivajjā*

(e) *Pañcamajjhānikacittesu upekkhāsahagatā te eve sangayhanti*

ti

(f) *sabbathā pi aṭṭhasu lokuttaracittesu pañcakajjhānavasena pañcadhā va sangaho hoti ti*

(3) 'Thirty-four factors [combining in the third stage of *Jhāna*]

(4) 'Thirty-three factors [combining in the fourth stage of *Jhāna*]

(5) 'Thirty-three factors [combining in the fifth stage of *Jhāna*'] (XX)

## II

### §13 *Factors that combine in the types of Mahaggata consciousness*

Factors, combining in the twenty-seven types of *Mahaggata*-consciousness, are considered under five heads, according to the five stages of *Jhāna*

#### *The First Stage*

'Among the types of *Mahaggata* consciousness, the following thirty-five factors combine in the three types of consciousness of the first stage of *Jhāna* [*Rūpāvacara*, *Kusala* 1 + *Vipāka* 1 + *Kiriyā* 1=3] —

*Aññasamāna* [*Sabba-Citta-Sādhāraṇa* 7 +

*Pakinnaka* 6]

13

All the good factors, except the three

abstinences

22

---

35

'*Karunā* and *Muditā* come separately, not together' (XXI a)

---

XX Chattunsa pañcatunsātha catuttunsa yathākkamam,

Tettunsa-dvayamiccevaṃ pañcadhānuttare thitā

XXI (a) Mahaggatesu pana tisu pathamajjhānikacittesu tāva aññasamānā terasa cetasikā virattayavajjitā dvāvisati sobhanacetasikā

The abstinences cannot come in the Jhanic states, when the subject is fully occupied with the *Kammatthānas*

*The Second Stage*

'The same factors, as above, combine in the three types of the *second stage of Jhāna*, except *Vitakka*' (XXI b)

Hence, there are only  $35-1=34$  factors in them

*The Third Stage*

'In the three types of the *third stage of Jhāna*, *Vitakka* and *Vicāra*, these two factors, are excluded' (XXI c)

Hence, there are only  $35-2=33$  factors in them

*The Fourth Stage*

'In the three types of the fourth stages of *Jhāna*, *Vitakka*, *Vicāra* and *Pīn*, these three factors, are excluded' (XXI d)

Hence, there are only  $35-3=32$  factors in them

*The Fifth Stage*

'In the fifteen types of consciousness of the fifth stage of *Jhāna* [*Rūpa* 3 + *Arūpa* 12=15] the two illimitables cannot be found' (XXI e)

*Karunā* and *Muditā*, these two illimitables, cannot be found in the fifth stage of *Jhāna* which is accompanied by *Upekkhā*

---

ceti pañcatimsa dhammā sangaham gacchanti Karunāmuditā panettha paccekameva yojetabbā

(b) Tathā dutyajjhānikacittesu vitakkavajjā

(c) Tatiyajjhānikacittesu vitakka-vicāravajjā

(d) Catutthajjhānikacittesu vitakkavicārapitivajjā

(e) Pañcamajjhānikacittesu pana pannarasasu appamaññāyo na labbhantī ti

Hence, there are only  $32-2=30$  factors in these types

‘Thus, the factors, combining in the twenty-seven types of *Mahaggata*-consciousness, have been considered under the above five heads according to the five stages of *Jhāna*’ (XXI f)

### RECAPITULATION

‘In the types of *Mahaggata*-consciousness, there are five sets of combinations, as follows —

(1) ‘Thirty-five factors, in the three types of the first stage of *Jhāna*

(2) ‘Thirty-four factors, in the three types of the second stage of *Jhāna*

(3) ‘Thirty-three factors, in the three types of the third stage of *Jhāna*

(4) ‘Thirty-two factors, in the three types of the fourth stage of *Jhāna*

(5) ‘Thirty factors, in the fifteen types of the fifth stage of *Jhāna*’ (XXII)

### III

§14. *Factors that combine in the types of Kāmāvacara good consciousness*

Among the types of *Kāmāvacara* good consciousness the same number of factors combine in the *Asankhārīka*

---

(f) sabbathā pi sattavīsattamahaggatacittesu pañcakajjhānavasena pañcadhā va sangaho hoti ti

XXII Pañcatinsa catuttinsa tittinsa ēa yathākkamam,  
Battinsa ceva tisseti pañcadhā va mahaggate

and *Sasankhāraka* types. Thus, among the twenty-four types of *Kāmāvacara* good consciousness the twelve pairs (of *Asankhāraka* and *Sasankhāraka*) have their own sets of combinations, the twelve pairs being (a) four of *Kusala*, (b) four of *Vipāka* and (c) four of *Kiriyā*

(a) *Kusala*

‘Among the types of *Kāmāvacara* good consciousness, among the moral (*Kusala*) ones—

(1)

‘Thirty-eight factors combine in the first pair [*Somanassa-sahagata Nāna-sampayutta Asankhāraka* and *Sasankhāraka*] of consciousness, such as—

‘ <i>Aññasamāna</i>	13
‘All the good factors	25
	38

‘*Karunā*, *Muditā*, *Sammā-Vācā*, *Sammā-Kammanta* and *Sammā-Ājīva*, these five factors, come separately, not two at a time; [therefore there can be only 34 factors at a time] (XXIII a)

(2)

‘The same factors, as above, combine in the second pair [*Somanassa-sahagata Nāna-vippayutta Asankhāraka* and *Sasankhāraka*], with the exception of ‘reason’ (XXIII b)

Hence, 38—1=37 factors combine in them

---

XXIII (a) *Kāmāvacarasobhanesu pana kusalesu tāva pathama-dvaye aññasamānā terasa cetasikā, pañcaviṣaṭu sobhanacetasikā ceti — atthattamsa dhammā sangham gacchanu Appamaññāvratiyo panettha pañca pi paccekameva yojetabbā*

(b) *Tathā dutiyadvaye ñānavajjitā*

(3)

'In the third pair [*Upekkhā-sahagata Nāna-sampayutta Asankhārīka* and *Sasankhārīka*] reason is present but *Pīti* is absent' (XXIII c)

Hence, the total of the factors remains the same as above

(4)

'In the fourth pair [*Upekkhā-sahagata Nāna-vip̐payutta Asankhārīka* and *Sasankhārīka*,] 'reason' and *Pīti* both are absent Hence, there are only  $38-2=36$  factors in them' (XXIII d)

(b) *Kiriyā*

'The three 'abstinences' do not come in the *Kiriyā*-consciousness [of the Arhat] Therefore, the same number of factors, as above, are present in the four pairs of *Kiriyā* consciousness, **less by three**' (XXIII e)

The Arhat has destroyed his *Tanha* (desire) and realised *Nibbāna* fully The abstinences have no bearing on him Therefore, the number of factors in his consciousness will be *less* than the number of factors in *Kusala* by three, as under—

First pair	$38-3=35$
Second pair	$37-3=34$
Third pair	$37-3=34$
Fourth pair	$36-3=33$

---

(c) *Tatīyadvaye ñānasampayuttā pītivajjitā*

(d) *Catutthadvaye ñāna-pītivajjitā te eva sangahyanti*

(e) *Kiriyācittesu pi virativajjitā tatheva catusu pi dukhesu catudhā va sangahyanti*

(c) *Vipāka*

‘The two illimitables and the three abstinences, these five factors, are not present in the *Vipāka* consciousness. Therefore, the same number of factors, as those of *Kusala*, are present in the four pairs of *Vipāka* consciousness less by five—

‘First pair	38—5=33
‘Second pair	37—5=32
‘Third pair	37—5=32
‘Fourth pair	36—5=31

‘Thus the factors of the twenty-four types of *Kāmāvacara* good consciousness have been classified into twelve pairs’ (XXIII f)

## RECAPITULATION

‘Among the [twenty-four] types of *Sahetuka Kāmāvacara* moral, resultant and inoperative consciousness, there are thirty-eight, thirty-seven, thirty-seven, and thirty-six factors respectively in [the four pairs of the types of] moral consciousness

‘In [the four pairs of the types of] inoperative consciousness, there are respectively thirty-five, thirty-four, thirty-four, and thirty-three factors

‘In [the four pairs of the types of] resultant consciousness, there are respectively thirty-three, thirty-two, thirty-two and thirty-one factors

---

(f) *Tathā vipākesu ca appamaññāvirativajjūtā te eva saṅgayhantī ti sabbathā pi catuvisatikāmāvacarasobhanacittesu dukavasena dvādasadhā va saṅgaho hotī ti*

'The three 'abstinences' do not arise in the types of *Kiriyā* and *Mahaggata* consciousness. The two 'illimitables' do not come in the Supra-mundane consciousness. All the above five factors [abstinences 3 + illimitables 2=5] are absent in *Kāmāvacara* resultant.

'The Supra-mundane types of consciousness differ in their Jhānic factors [i.e., the same types may be associated with the different stages of *Jhāna*].

'The *Mahaggata* types of consciousness may be differentiated from one another according to the constituents of *Jhāna* and according to the illimitables.

'The *Kāmāvacara* types of moral consciousness may be associated with any of the three abstinences at a time, may be accompanied by 'reason' [*Nāna*] or not and, may be accompanied by *Piṭi* [*Somanassa-Sahagata*] or be without it [*Upekkhā-Sahagata*]' (XXIV)

#### IV

#### §15 *Factors that combine in the types of immoral consciousness*

##### (1)

##### *The first Asankhārīka type of Lobha-consciousness*

'Among the types of immoral consciousness, among the consciousness rooted in *Lobha*—

---

XXIV Atthātunsa sattātunsa-dvayam chatṭunsakam subhe,  
Pañcatunsa catuttunsa-dvayam tetṭunsakam kriye  
Tetṭunsa pāke batunsa-dvayekātunsakam bhāve,  
Sahetukakāmāvacarapuññāpākakriyāmane  
Na vijjantettha viratī kriyāsu ca mahaggate,  
Anuttare appamaññā kāmāpāke dvayam tathā  
Anuttare jhānadhammā appamaññā ca majjhime,



‘There are nineteen factors that combine in the first *Asankhārika* type of consciousness, as follows —

‘*Aññasamāna* [*Sabbacitta-sādhāraṇa*

7+ *Pakinnaka* 6] 13

‘*Akusala-sādhāraṇa* [factors common to all the types of immoral consciousness, i.e., *Moha*, *Ahūrika*, *Anatappa* and *Uddhacca* 4

‘*Lobha* and *Diṭṭhi* 2

---

19 (XXV a)

(11)

*The second Asankhārika type of*

*Lobha-consciousness*

‘There are the same number of factors that combine in the second *Asankhārika* type of consciousness, *Māna* being substituted for *Diṭṭhi*’ (XXV b)

(111)

*The third Asankhārika type of*

*Lobha-consciousness*

‘In the third *Asankhārika* type of *Lobha-consciousness*, there are eighteen factors accompanied by *Diṭṭhi*, but

---

Viratī ñānapīti ca paritṭesu viṣesakā

XXV (a) *Akusalesu pana lobhamūlesu tāva pathame asankhārike aññasamānā terasa cetasikā, akusalasādhāraṇā cattāro cā ti sattarasa lobhaditṭhihi saddhum ekūnavasati dhammā sangham gacchanti*

(b) ‘*Tatheva dutiye asankhārike lobhamānena*

unaccompanied by *Pīti* — (XXV c)

<i>Aññasamāna</i> except <i>Pīti</i>	12
<i>Akusala-sādhāraṇa</i>	4
<i>Lobha</i> and <i>Diṭṭhi</i>	2
	<hr/>
	18

(iv)

*The fourth Asankhārika type of  
Lobha-consciousness*

‘There are the same number of factors that combine in the fourth *Asankhārika* type of consciousness, *Māna* being substituted for *Diṭṭhi*’ (XXV d)

(v)

*The fifth Asankhārika type (Dosa-consciousness)*

‘In the fifth *Asankhārika* type of immoral consciousness, there are altogether twenty factors, accompanied by *Dosa* (hate), *Issā* (envy), *Macchariya* (jealousy) and *Kukkucsa* (worry, remorse), but unaccompanied by *Pīti*, the residue being the same as above

‘*Issā*, *Macchera* and *Kukkucca* come separately, not two at a time’ (XXVI a)

The twenty factors in this type of consciousness are —

(c) *Tatiye tatheva pītiyajjūtā lobhaditṭhihi saha aṭṭhārasa*

(d) *Catutthe tatheva lobhamānena*

XXVI (a) *Pañcāme pana paṭighasampayutte asankhārike doso, issā, macchariyam, kukkuccam ceti catūhi saddhim pītiyajjūtā te eva visatī dhammā sangayhanti Issāmaccherakukkuccāni panettha paccekameva yojetabbāni*

<i>Aññasamāna</i> , except <i>Piṇ</i>	12
<i>Akusala-sādhārana</i>	4
<i>Dosa, Issā, Macchariya, Kukkucca</i>	4
	<hr/>
	20

(vi-x)

The *Sasankhārika* types of consciousness, corresponding to the above five *Asankhārika* ones

In the corresponding five *Sasankhārika* types of consciousness, the number of the factors is the same as in the *Asankhārika* ones, two—*Thīna* and *Middha*—being added to each ' (XXVI b)

Therefore, the total number of factors in them will be —

- (1)  $19+2=21$  [with *Lobha* and *Diṭṭhi*]
- (2)  $19+2=21$  [with *Lobha* and *Māna*]
- (3)  $18+2=20$  [with *Lobha* and *Diṭṭhi*]
- (4)  $18+2=20$  [with *Lobha* and *Māna*]
- (5)  $20+2=22$  [with *Dosa, Issā, Macchariya, Kukkucca*]

From amongst the *Aññasamāna* factors, *Piṇ* is absent in the last three types of consciousness

(xi)

*The type of distracted consciousness*

[*Upekkhā-sahagata Uddhacca-sampayutta*]

'There are fifteen factors in the type of distracted

---

(b) *Sasankhārikapañcake* pi tatheva athīnamiddhena viśeṣetvā yojetabbā

consciousness, as follows —

' <i>Aññasamāna</i> , except <i>Chanda</i> and <i>Pīti</i>	—	11
' <i>Akusala-sādhārāna</i>	— — —	4
		15

(XXVII) a)

A distracted mind cannot have *Chanda* (an urge to do) as it is dull and inactive. It is not accompanied by *Pīti* also, for, there is *Upekkhā* in it

(xii)

*The type of perplexed consciousness*

[*Upekkhā-sahagata Vicikicchā-sampayutta*]

'In the type of perplexed consciousness, there are fifteen factors, just as above, but, *Adhimokkha* (belief) being absent, and *Vicikicchā* (perplexity) being present' (XXVII b)

*Adhimokkha* (belief) is not possible in a perplexed mind which is full of doubts. Hence, the fifteen factors of this type are —

<i>Aññasamāna</i> , except <i>Chanda</i> , <i>Pīti</i> and	
<i>Adhimokkha</i>	10
<i>Akusala-sādhārāna</i>	4
<i>Vicikicchā</i>	1
	15

---

XXVII (a) Chandapativajjitā pana aññasamānā ekādasā, akusala-sādhārānā cattāro cā ti pannarasa dhammā uddhaccasahagatā sampayujjanti

(b) Vicikicchāsahagatācittā cā adhimokkhavirahitā vicikicchāsahagatā tatheva pannarasadhammā samupalabbhanti ti

## CONCLUSION

The following chart will show the number of factors in the twelve types of immoral consciousness in the order as discussed above —

<i>Asankhārīka</i>					<i>Sasankhārīka</i>					<i>Momūha</i>	
<i>Lobha</i>				<i>Dosa</i>	<i>Lobha</i>				<i>Dosa</i>	<i>Vicikicchā</i>	<i>Uddhacca</i>
1st	2nd	3rd	4th	1st	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	2nd		
19	19	18	18	20	21	21	20	20	22	15	15
I		II		III	IV		V		VI	VII	

‘Thus, in the twelve types of immoral consciousness, there are seven sets, having the same number of factors in them’ (XXVII c)

The seven sets of the types of immoral consciousness, respectively consist of —

19 factors [*Asankharikā*, *Lobha*, 1st and 3rd]

18 factors [ „ „ 5th and 7th]

20 factors [ „ *Dosa* 1st ]

21 factors [*Sasankhārīka*, *Lobha*, 2nd and 4th]

20 factors [ „ „ 6th and 8th]

22 factors [ „ *Dosa* 2nd ]

15 factors [*Momūha*, 1st and 2nd ]’

(XXVIII a)

(c) sabbathā pi dvādasākusalacittuppādesu paccekam yojyamānā pi ganānāvasenā sattadhā va sangahitā bhavanti ti

XXVIII (a) Ekūnavisaṭṭhārāsa visekavisa vīsati,  
Dvāvīsa pannaraseti sattadhākusale tithā

‘The following fourteen factors are found in all the types of immoral consciousness —

‘ <i>Akusala-sādhāraṇa</i> [ <i>Moha, Ahirika, Anotappa,</i> <i>Uddhacca</i> ]	4
‘ <i>Aññasamāna</i> , except <i>Chanda, Pīti</i> and <i>Adhmokkha</i>	10 14’
	(XXVIII b)

## V

§16 *Factors that combine in the types of .*  
*Ahetuka consciousness*

According to the number of factors that they have, the eighteen types of *Ahetuka*-consciousness have been considered as follows —

(1)

*Hasitupphāda*

(Smile of the Arhat)

‘Among the types of *Ahetuka*-consciousness, in the *Hasitupphāda* one, there are twelve factors, as under —

‘ <i>Aññasamāna</i> , except <i>Chanda</i>	12’
	(XXIX a)

(11)

*Votthapana*

(Determining consciousness)

‘*Chanda* and *Pīti*, these two factors, are not possible in

(b) *Sādhāraṇā ca cattāro samānā ca dasāpare,*  
*Cuddasete pavuccanti sabbākusalayogino*

XXIX (a) *Ahetukesu pana hasanacitte tāva chandavajjitā aññasamānā dvādasa dhammā sangaham gacchanti*

*Votthapana*-consciousness ' (XXIX b)

Hence, there are only eleven factors in it, namely, *Aññasamāna*, except *Chanda* and *Pīti*

*Votthapana* is the same as *Manodvārāvajjana*, both being representative, reviving the past experience and associating it with the present

(iii)

*Somanassa-sahagata Sanatīraṇa*

. (Investigating consciousness accompanied  
by delight)

'*Chanda* and *Viriya*, these two factors, are not present in the investigating consciousness accompanied by delight ' (XXIX c)

Therefore, there are only eleven factors in it, namely—*Aññasamāna*, except *Chanda* and *Viriya*

(iv-viii)

*Pañca-Dvārāvajjana* [*Kiriyā*]

*Sampaticchana* [moral and immoral resultant]

*Sanatīraṇa* [accompanied by indifference]

*Pañcadvārāvajjana* and the two *Sampaticchana*, these three, are called *Manodhātutika* or the triple faculty of apprehension

The moral and immoral resultant *Sanatīraṇa*, accompanied by *Upekkhā*, give *Ahetuka Patisaṇḍhi* or 'weak type of rebirth-consciousness,' not rooted in the *Hetus*

---

(b) Tathā votthapanā chandapītivajjā

(c) Sukhasanatīraṇe chandavīriyavajjā

They have been called here *Ahetuka-Patisandhi yugala* or the pair of *Ahetuka* rebirth-consciousness

*Chanda*, *Piti* and *Viriya*, these three factors, are absent in the following five types of consciousness —

- (1) 'Pañcadvārāvajjana
  - (2) *Ahetuka Kusala-Vipāka Sampācchana*
  - (3) „ *Akusala* „ „
  - (4) „ „ „ *Santīraṇa*
  - (5) „ *Kusala* „ „
- (*Upekkhā-sahagata*)' (XXIX d)

Therefore, there are only ten factors in these types of consciousness, namely —

*Aññasamāna*, except *Chanda*, *Piti* and *Viriya*=10

(IX-XVIII)

*Dvi-Pañca-Viññāna*

[*Twice five-fold Viññāna*]

'In the twice five-fold *Viññāna*, the *Pakinnaka*-factors are absent altogether. Hence, there are only the seven *Sabba-Citta-Sādhāraṇa* factors in them' (XXIX e)

They are pure sensations, the simplest types of consciousness, arising as a resultant of the previous karmas.

#### CONCLUSION

The following chart will show the number of factors

- 
- (d) Manodhātutthikāhetukapatisandhiyugale chandapitiviriya-  
vajjitā
- (e) Dvipañcaviññāne pakinnakavajjitā te yeva sangayhanti ti



in the eighteen types of *Ahetuka* consciousness, in the order as discussed above —

Types of consciousness	No of factors
1 <i>Hasituppāda</i> [ <i>Aññasamāna</i> , except <i>Chanda</i> ]	12 I
2 <i>Votthapana</i> [ <i>Aññasamāna</i> , except <i>Chanda</i> and <i>Pīti</i> ]	11 } II
3 <i>Somanassa-Sahagata-Santīrana</i> [except <i>Chanda</i> and <i>Viriya</i> ]	11 }
4 <i>Pañcadvārāvajjana</i> , <i>Sampaticchana</i> (2), <i>Santīrana</i> (2), [except <i>Chanda</i> , <i>Pīti</i> and <i>Viriya</i> ]	10 } III
5 <i>Dvi-Pañca Viññāna</i> (10,	7 IV

‘Thus, in the eighteen types of *Ahetuka*-consciousness, there are four sets, *having the same number* of factors in them’ (XXIX f)

‘12 factors [*Hasituppāda*]

‘11 factors [*Votthapana*, *Manodvārāvajjana* and *Upekkhā-Santīrana*]

‘10 factors [*Pañcadvārāvajjana*, *Sampaticchana* (2) and *Upekkhā Santīrana*]

‘7 factors [*Dvi-Pañca-Viññāna*]

‘Seven factors are common to all the types of *Ahetuka*-

(f) sabbathā pi atthārasasu ahetukesu gananasasena catudhā va sangaho hoti ti

consciousness The six *Pakinnaka* factors come in them, as conditions permit

‘Thus, the combination of the factors have been discussed in thirty-three sets of the types of consciousness’  
(XXX a)

The thirty-three sets are —

<i>Lokuttara</i>	5
<i>Mahaggata</i>	5
<i>Kāmāvacara</i>	12
<i>Akusala</i>	7
<i>Ahetuka</i>	4
	<hr/> 33

‘Having known the combination and classification of the psychic factors as described above, one should be able to tell the exact nature of the type of consciousness’  
(XXX b)

---

XXX (a) Dvādasekādasā dasa satta cā ti catubbidho,  
Aññārasāhetukesu cittuppadēsu sangaho  
Ahetukesu sabbattha satta sesā yathāraham,  
Iti vitthārato vutto tēttimsaviddhasangaho

(b) Ittham cittāviyuttānam sampayogam ca saṅgaham,  
Ñātvā bhedaṃ yathāyogam cittaṇa samamuddise

## CHAPTER III

### PAKINNAKA

(Miscellaneous)

‘The types of consciousness and their concomitant psychic factors really represent only fifty-three states of the mind,\* which combine with one another in different ways

‘Herein, we are going to discuss how consciousness arises in relation to *Vedanā* (feeling), *Hetu* (the six mental tendencies), *Kicca* (function), *Dvāra* (doors of cognition), *Ālambana* (objects of cognition) and *Vatthu* (organs of cognition)’ (I)

#### §1 *In relation to Vedanā (feeling)*

*Vedanā* is a psychic factor that is essentially present in all consciousness ‘It is primarily of three kinds namely, (1) *Sukha* (agreeable), (2) *Dukkha* (disagreeable), and (3) *Upekkhā* (indifference)’ (II a)

The consciousness (*Viññāna*) of the eye, the ear, the nose and the tongue is accompanied by *Upekkhā* (indiffer-

---

\*Psychic factors 52+all the types of consciousness considered as 1=53

I Sampayuttā yathāyogam tepaññāsa sabhāvato,  
Cittacetasikā dhammā tesam dāni yathāraham  
Vedanāhetuto kiccadvārārammanavattthuto,  
Cittuppādaseneva sangaho nāma niyate

II (a) Tattha vedanāsangahe tāva tividhā vedanā—Sukham,  
Dukkham, Adukkhamasukham ceti

ence), but the consciousness of touch (*Kāyaviññāna*), being more effective, is accompanied by either *Sukha* or *Dukkha*

The *Javana* types of consciousness may be accompanied by a feeling of *Somanassa* (delight) if the object is agreeable, and by a feeling of *Domanassa* (antipathy) if the object is disagreeable. If the object is very agreeable, there may arise a feeling of *Somanassa* (delight) even at the stage of *Santirana* consciousness

‘Thus, there are altogether five kinds of feeling, namely, (1) *Sukha* (the agreeable feeling in touch-consciousness), (2) *Dukkha* (the disagreeable feeling in touch-consciousness), (3) *Somanassa* (delight), (4) *Domanassa* (antipathy) and (5) *Upekkhā* (indifference)’ (II b)

The feelings are related to consciousness in the following manner —

(I)

*Sukha*

[*Agreeable*]

‘Only one type of consciousness is accompanied by *Sukha*, namely, the touch-consciousness as the resultant of previous good Karmas’ (III a)

(II)

*Dukkha*

[*Disagreeable*]

‘Similarly, there is only one type of consciousness which

---

(b) Sukham, Dukkham, Somanassam, Domanassam, Upekkhā  
ti ca bhedenā pana pañicadhā hoti

III (a) Tattha sukkasahagatam, kusala vipākam, kāyaviññānamekameva

is accompanied by *Dukkha*, namely, the touch-consciousness as the resultant of previous bad Karmas ' (III b)

(III)

*Somanassa*

[*Delight*]

'There are sixty-two types of consciousness accompanied by *Somanassa* (delight), as under —

'Rooted in <i>Lobha</i>	4	} = 18 <i>Kāmāvacara</i>
' <i>Kāmāvacara Sobhana</i> [ <i>Kusala + Vipāka + Kiriya</i> ]	12	
' <i>Somanassa-Santiirana</i> [ <i>Ahetuka-Kusala-Vipāka</i> ]	1	
' <i>Hasitupphāda</i> [smile of the <i>Arahat</i> ]	1	
'Types of consciousness of the first, the second, the third, and the fourth stages of <i>Jhāna</i>	44	} <i>Mahaggata</i> and <i>Lokuttara</i>
	62	

(III c)

(IV)

*Domanassa*

[*Antipathy*]

There are only two types of consciousness that are accompanied by *Domanassa* (antipathy), namely, the two types of enraged consciousness (III d)

(b) Tathā dukkhasahagatam akusalavipākam kāyaviññānam

(c) Somanassasahagata-cittāni pana lobhamulāni cattāri Dvādasa kāmāvacara-sobhanāni Sikkhasamānāna hasanāni ca dve ti aṭṭhā-rasa kāmāvacaracittāni ceva pathama-dutiya-tatiya-catutthajjhāna-sankhātāni catucattālisa mahaggatalokuttaracittāni ceti dvāsattthividhāni bhavanti

(V)

*Upekkhā*

[Indifference]

‘All the remaining types of consciousness are accompanied by *Upekkhā* (indifference)

‘They are altogether fifty-five in number’ (III e), as follows —

Rooted in <i>Lobha</i>	4
Rooted in <i>Moha</i>	2
<i>Ahetuka Akusala-Vipāka</i> , except <i>Kāya-Viññāna</i> .. ..	6
<i>Ahetuka Kusala-Vipāka</i> , except <i>Kāya-Viññāna</i> and <i>Somanassa-saññāna</i>	6
<i>Ahetuka Kiriya</i> , except <i>Hasitupphāda</i> ..	2
<i>Kāmāvacara Sobhana</i> [ <i>Kusala + Vipāka + Kiriya</i> ]	12
Types of the fifth stage of <i>Jhāna</i>	23
	<hr/> 55

## RECAPITULATION

‘Primarily, there are three kinds of feeling, namely, *Sukha*, *Dukkha* and *Upekkhā*. They become five, when a consideration is made of *Somanassa* and *Domanassa* as well. One type of consciousness is accompanied by *Sukha*, one

---

(d) *Domanassasahagatacittāni pana dve patighacittāneva*

(e) *Sesāni sabbāni pi pañcapaññāsa upekkhā-sahagatacittāneva*

by *Dukkha*, two by *Domanassa*, sixty-two by *Somanassa*, and fifty-five by *Upekkhā* (IV)

### §2 *In relation to Hetu*

The *Hetus* are six in number, namely, (1) *Lobha* (greed), (2) *Dosa* (hate), (3) *Moha* (dullness and deception), (4) *Alobha* (self-sacrificingness), (5) *Adosa* (goodwill) and (6) *Amoha* (insight) (V)

They are called *Hetus*, because they are the roots of all good and bad consciousness

They are related to consciousness in the following manner —

(I)

*Ahetuka*

[*Types of consciousness unaccompanied by the Hetus*]

‘There are eighteen types of consciousness not rooted in the *Hetus*, as follows —

‘ <i>Pañcadvārāvajjana</i>	.	1
‘ <i>Votthapana-Manodvārāvājjana</i>		1
‘ <i>Hasitupphāda</i>	.	1
<i>Dvi-Pañca-Viññāna</i> [twice five-fold sensation]		10
‘ <i>Sampahicchana</i> [ <i>Vipāka</i> , <i>Kusala</i> + <i>Akusala</i> ]		2
‘ <i>Santīrana</i> [ <i>Vipāka</i> , <i>Kusala</i> + <i>Akusala</i> ]		3
		18

IV *Sukham dukkham upekkhā ti tividhā tattha vedanā*

*Somanassam domanassamutī bhedena pañcadhā*

*Sukhamekattha dukkham ca domanassam dvaye tītam,*

*Dvāsaṭṭhisu somanassam pañcapaññāsaketarā*

V *Hetusangahe hetavo nāma, Lobho, Doso, Moho, Alobho, Adoso, Amoho, cā ti chaddhā bhavanti*

‘The remaining [89—18=71] seventy-one types of consciousness are *Sahetuka* or accompanied by the *Hetu*’ (VI)

## (II)

*Eka-hetuka*

[Types of consciousness rooted in only one *Hetu*]

‘The two types of confused consciousness are rooted in only one *Hetu* [1 e, *Moha*]’ (VII a)

## III

*Du-hetuka*

[Types of consciousness rooted in two *Hetus*]

‘The types of immoral consciousness, with the exception of the above two, are rooted in two *Hetus*, namely,

[*Lobha* 8+*Dosa* 2] 10

‘*Kāmāvacara Sobhana*, unaccompanied by knowledge [*Ñāna-Vip̐payutta*, *Kusala*+  
*Vip̐kā*+*Kiriyā*] 12

22

(VII b)

The eight types of *Lobha*-consciousness are rooted in (1) *Lobha* and (2) *Moha*, for *Lobha* cannot exist without *Moha*

The two types of *Dosa*-consciousness are rooted in (1) *Dosa* and (2) *Moha*, for, *Dosa* also cannot arise without the blinding influence of *Moha*

---

VI Tattha pañcadvārāvajjana-dvīpañcaviññāna-sampaticchana-santirāna votthapana—hasanavasena atthārāsa ahetukacittāni nāma Sesāni sabbāni pi ekasattatā cittāni sahetukāneva

VII (a) Tatthāpi dve momūhacittāni ekahetukāni

(b) Sesāni dasa akusalacittāni ceva ñānavip̐payuttāni dvādasā kāmāvacara-sobhanāni ceti dvāvisatī duhetukacittāni



The twelve types of *Ñāna-Vip̄payutta Kāmāvacara Sobhana* consciousness are rooted in (1) *Alobha* and (2) *Adosa* they are unaccompanied by *Amoha* (insight)

(IV)

*Ti-hetuka*

[Types of consciousness rooted in three Hetus]

‘Forty-seven types of consciousness are rooted in the three [*Kusala*] Hetus, as follows —

‘*Kāmāvacara Sobhana*, accompanied by knowledge [*Ñāna-Sampayutta, Kusala+ Vipāka+Kiriya*] 12

‘*Mahaggata* [*Rūpa* 15+*Arūpa* 12] and *Lokuttara* [*Magga* 4+*Phala* 4]’ 35  
47

(VII c)

#### RECAPITULATION

‘*Lobha, Dosa* and *Moha* are the three **immoral** Hetus *Alobha, Adosa* and *Amoha* are the three **moral** Hetus in the types of moral [*Kusala*] consciousness, but in the types of resultant and inoperative consciousness [*Sobhana, Vipāka* and *Kiriya*] they are **non-moral** (*Avyākata*)

‘Eighteen types of consciousness are without any Hetu, two with one, twenty-two with two, and forty-seven with three’ (VIII)

---

(c) Dvādasa ñāna-sampayuttakāmāvacarasobhanāni ceva pañcatimsa mahaggatalokuttara-cittāni ceti sattacattālisa tīhetukacittāni ti

VIII Lobho doso ca moho ca hetū akusalā tayo,  
Alobhādosāmohā ca kusalābyākata tathā  
Ahetukatthārasekahetukā dve duvisati,  
Duhetukā matā sattacattālisa tīhetukā

nothing else but our own past experiences and imaginations acting in the present. It exercises very powerful influence upon our present moment of life. It is indeed a part of our personality, and is, therefore, called *Bhavanga* or a part of our being.

It is in the continuation of this flow of the undercurrent of our mind that, at the time of death, we get the *Cuti-Citta* or the dying consciousness, on an object presenting itself as *Kamma*, *Kammanimutta* or *Gatinimutta*, and also the *Patisandhu* consciousness upon the same objects,

Thus, there are altogether fourteen functions of the mind, as follows —

- (1) '*Patisandhu* or consciousness connecting one life with the other
- (2) '*Bhavanga* or the current of the passive mind
- (3) '*Āvajjana* or turning to impressions at the five doors of senses or at the mind-door
- (4) '*Dassana* or seeing
- (5) '*Savana* or hearing.
- (6) '*Ghāyana* or smelling
- (7) '*Sāyana* or tasting
- (8) '*Phusana* or touching
- (9) '*Sampaticchana* or receiving the impression
- (10) '*Santirana* or investigating
- (11) '*Votthapana* or determining
- (12) '*Javana* or the activity of the subject

(13) 'Tadālamāna or registering the experience

(14) 'Cutī or consciousness disconnecting the present life' (IX a)

Seeing, hearing, smelling, tasting and touching, these five, occupy the same stage in the process of perception. Therefore, in reality 'there are only ten stages amongst them, viz ,

(1) *Paṭisandhī*, (2) *Bhavāṅga*, (3) *Āvajjana*, (4) *Pañcaviññāna*, (5) *Sampaticchana*, (6) *Santīrana*, (7) *Votthapana*, (8) *Javana*, (9) *Tadālamāna* and (10) *Cutī*' (IX b)

The relation of the functions with consciousness will be shown here in two ways, namely, (A) the types of consciousness performing the same functions and (B) the functions performed by the same type of consciousness

(A)

### **The types of consciousness performing the same functions**

(i) *Paṭisandhī*, *Bhavāṅga* and *Cutī*

*Bhavāṅga* is the subconscious activity of the mind in one life, *Paṭisandhī* is the conscious activity of connecting one life with the other, and *Cutī* is that of disconnecting the present life

'These three functions are performed by the same types of *Vipāka*-consciousness that are the resultant of previous Karmas.

---

IX (a) Kīccasangahe kiccāni nāma paṭisandhī-bhavāṅgāvajjana-dassana-savana-ghāyana-sāyana-phusana sampaticchana-santīrana-votthapana-javana-tadārammaṇa cutivasena cūddasavidhāni bhavanti

(b) Paṭisandhī-bhavāṅgāvajjana-pañcaviññānatthānādivasena pana tesam dasadhā thānabhedo vedītabbo

‘They are the following —

‘Upekkhā-Sahagata Santīraṇa [Kusala +	
Akusala]	2
‘Mahā-Vipāka [Kāmāvacara Sobhana]	8
‘Rupāvacara + Arāpāvacara Vipāka,	9
	<hr/> 19
	(X a)

(u) *Āvajjana*

‘There are two types of consciousness that perform the function of *Āvajjana*’ (X b)

They are—(1) *Pañca-Dvārāvajjana* of turning to impressions at the five doors of senses, and (2) *Mono-Dvārāvajjana* of turning to impressions at the mind door

(iv) *Dassana, Savana, Ghāyana, Sāyana, Phusana*

and *Sampaticchana*

‘Seeing, hearing, smelling, tasting, touching and receiving the impressions, these six functions are performed each by two types of consciousness (X c)

*Dassana* is performed by (1) *Kusala-Vipaka-Cakkhu Viññāna* and (2) *Akusala-Vipāka Cakkhu-Viññāna*. Similarly, the others are also performed by (1) *Kusala-Vipāka* and (2) *Akusala-Vipāka*

(iv) *Santīraṇa*

‘*Santīraṇa Kicca* or the function of investigating is

X (a) Tattha dve upekkhāsahagatasantiranāni ceva aṭṭha mahāvipākāni ca nava rūpārūpavipākāni ceti ekūnavasati cittāni paṭisandhi-bhavanga-cutikiccānāma

(b) Āvajjana-kiccāni pana dve

(c) Tathā dassana-savana-ghāyana-sāyana-phusana-sampaticchanakiccāni ca

performed by three types of consciousness' (X d)

The three types are—(1) *Akusala-Vipāka Upekkhā-Sahagata Santīraṇa Citta*, (2) *Kusala-Vipāka Upekkhā-Sahagata Santīraṇa Citta* and (3) *Kusala-Vipāka Somanassa-Sahagata Santīraṇa Citta*

(v) *Votthapana*

'In the process of cognition through the five doors of senses, the function of determining the object (*Votthapana Kicca*) is performed by the same type of consciousness as *Manodvārāvajjana Citta*' [See p 4.] (X e)

Both the above functions of *Votthapana* and *Manodvārāvajjana* are very much the same, i e, of reviving the past experience. They are performed by the same type of consciousness called *Upekkhā-Sahagata Manodvārāvajjana Ahetuka Kīṇyā-Citta*. The only difference between the two functions is that in the first case the impression has been received through the five doors of senses, but in the second it is ideational received from within.

(vi) *Javana*

'*Javana-Kicca* or the activity of the subject is performed by fifty-five types of consciousness, namely,

'*Kusala* [*Kāma* 8 + *Mahaggata* 9 + *Lokuttara*

4] 21

'*Akusala* [*Lobha* 8 + *Dosa* 2 + *Moha* 2] 12

'*Phala* [*Sotāpatti*, *Sakadāgāmi*, *Anāgāmi*

*Arahatta*] 4

---

(d) *Tinī santīraṇa-kiccāni*

(e) *Manodvārāvajjanameva*  
sādhetai

pañcadvāre

*votthapanakiccāni*

‘*Kiriyā*, with the exception of *Pañcadvārā-vajjana* and *Manodvārāvajjana*, [*Kāma*  
8+*Mahaggata* 9+*Hasitupphāda* 1]

18

55’ (X f)

(vi) *Tadāmbana*

We come across so many things but do not remember all of them with the same vividness. Only those impressions are easily revived which we have received attentively, either with the feeling of attachment towards it or with that of repulsion against it. Thus, a dear friend and a bitter enemy come to mind very much.

Such feelings of attachment and repulsion exist only in the *Kāmāvacara Citta*, the *Vipāka* of which does the function of registering the impressions in the mind. This is called *Tadāmbana Kicca* or the function of holding the experience.

- *Mahaggata Citta* is free from the influence of diverse desires, and, therefore, the *Vipāka* of it does not do this function.

‘*Tadāmbana-Kicca* or the function of registering the experience is performed by the following eleven types of [*Kāmāvacara-Vipāka*] consciousness —

‘*Mahā-Vipāka*

8

‘*Santīrana*

3

11’ (X g)

---

X (f) *Āvajjanadvayavajjutāni kusalākusala-phala-kriyā-cittāni*  
*pañcapaññāsa javanakiccāni*

(g) *Mahāvīpākāni ceva santīranattayam ceti ekādasa tadāram-*  
*manakiccāni*

(B)

**Functions which are performed by  
the same types of consciousness**

From what has been discussed above, the following chart can be drawn to show what functions are performed by the same type of consciousness

No of the types of consciousness	Types of consciousness	Tadalambana	Santirana	1 Patissandhi 2 Bhavanga 3 Cuti	Votthapana	Javana	Avajjana	Sampaticchana	Dassana, Savana, Gahayana, Phusana	Total of functions
2	Upekkhā-Santirana	1	1	3						5
8	Mahā-Vipākā*	1		3						4
9	Mahaggāta-Vipākā			3						3
1	Somanassa-Santirana	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	2
1	Manodvārāvajjana									2
55	Javana					1				1
1	Pañca-Dvārāvajjana						1			1
2	Sampaticchana							1		1
10	Vi-Pañca-Viññāna								1	1
89										

\*The types of sahetuka kāmāvara resultant consciousness



Among them —

(1) 'The two types of investigating consciousness, accompanied by indifference, perform five functions, namely—*Paṭisandhī*, *Bhavanga*, *Cuti*, *Tadālambaṇa* and *Santīraṇa*

(2) 'The eight types of *Mahā-Vipāka* consciousness perform four functions, namely, *Paṭisandhī*, *Bhavanga*, *Cuti* and *Tadālambaṇa*

(3) 'The nine types of *Mahaggata-Vipāka* consciousness perform three functions, namely, *Paṭisandhī*, *Bhavanga* and *Cuti*

(4) 'The one type of investigating consciousness, accompanied by delight, performs two functions, namely—*Santīraṇa* and *Tadālambaṇa*

(5) 'The one type of *Manodvārāvajjana* (turning to impressions at the mind door) consciousness performs two functions, namely, *Votthapana* (determining an object) and *Āvajjana* (turning to the impression)

(6) 'The remaining fifty-five types of *Javana* consciousness perform only one function of *Javana*

(7) 'One type of *Pañca-Dvārāvajjana* consciousness performs the one function of *Āvajjana* or turning to impression

(8) 'The two types of *Sampaticchana* (recipient) consciousness perform the one function of *Sampaticchana* or receiving the object

(9) 'The twice five-fold *Viññāna* consciousness perform their respective functions of seeing, hearing, smelling,

tasting and touching ' (XI)

### RECAPITULATION

'The states of consciousness, such as rebirth and so on, are fourteen according to their functions, and ten according to their stages

'Sixty-eight<sup>1</sup> types of consciousness have only one function, and one stages

'Two<sup>2</sup> types of consciousness have two functions, and two stages

'Nine<sup>3</sup> types of consciousness have three functions, and three stages

'Eight<sup>4</sup> types of consciousness have four functions, and four stages

'Two<sup>5</sup> types of consciousness have five functions, and five stages ' (XII)

XI Tesu pana dve upekkhāsahagatasantīranacittāni patisandhibhavanga-cuti-tadārammana-santīranavasena pañcakiccāni nāma Mahāvīpākāni attha patisandhibhavanga-cuti-tadārammanavasena catukiccāni Mahaggatavīpākāni nava patisandhibhavanga-cuttivasena tikiccāni Somanassasahagatam santīranam santīrana-tadārammanavasena dukkham, Tathā voṭṭhapanam ca voṭṭhapanāvajjanavasena Sesaṇi pana sabbāni pi javanamanodhātutika-dvipañcaviññānāni yathāsambhavamekakiccāni ti

1 Javana 55+Pañcadvārāvajjana 1+Sampaticchana 2+Dvipañcaviññāna 10=68

2 Mano-Dvārāvajjana 1+Somanassa-Santīrana 1=2

3 Mahaggata-Vīpāka (Rūpa 5+Arūpa 4)=9

4 Mahā-Vīpāka 8

5 Upekkhā-Santīrana [Vīpāka, Kusala+Akusala] 2

XII Patīsandhādayo nāma kiccabhedenā cūddasa,  
Dasadhā thānabhedenā cittuppādā pakāsitā  
Atthasatthi tathā dve ca navattha dve yathākkamam,  
Eka-dvi-ti-catu-pañcakīcatthānāni niddise

§4 In relation to *Dvāra* or 'the doors  
of cognition'

'Sight, hearing, smell, taste, touch and mind, these six, are the doors through which knowledge is received' (XIII)

'Sight is called *Cakkhu-Dvāra* or eye-door, hearing *Sota-Dvāra* or ear-door, smell *Ghāṇa Dvāra* or nose door, taste *Jivhā Dvāra* or tongue door, touch *Kāya-Dvāra* or touch door Mind door is *Bhavanga* or the sub-conscious' (XIV)

The doors are related to consciousness in the following manner: —

(I)

*Types of consciousness that may arise  
through the five doors of senses*

'The following forty-six types of consciousness may arise through the eye door --

' <i>Pañca Dvārāvajjana</i> [ <i>Ahetuka Kiriya</i> ]	1
' <i>Cakkhu Viññāna</i> [ <i>Vipāka, Kusala+Akusala</i> ]	2
' <i>Sampaticchana</i> [ <i>Vipāka, Kusala+Akusala</i> ]	2
' <i>Santhāraṇa</i> [ <i>Vipāka, Kusala+Akusala</i> ]	3
' <i>Manodvārāvajjana</i> [immoral 12+good 16+ <i>Hasitupāda</i> 1]	29

XIII *Dvārasangahe dvārāni nāma, cakkhudvāram, sotadvāram, ghānavdvāram, jivhadvāram, kāyadvāram, manodvāram, ceti chabbidhāni bhavanti*

XIV Tatta cakkhumeva cakkhudvāram Tathā sotādayo sotadvārādini Manodvāram pana bhavanga ti pavuccati

'Types of consciousness performing the function of <i>Tadā lambana</i> * [ <i>Mahā-Vipāka</i> ]	8
	<hr/>
	46

'Similarly, forty-six types of consciousness may arise through each of the other four doors of senses

'Thus, [adding the types of *Sota-Viññāna* 2 + *Ghāna-Viññāna* 2 + *Jvāhā-Viññāna* 2 + *Kāya-Viññāna* 2 = 8 to the above 46 types] there are altogether fifty four types of consciousness arising through the five doors of senses These are of the *Kāmāvacara* consciousness' (XV)

(II)

*Types of consciousness that may arise  
through the mind-door*

'The following sixty-seven types of consciousness arise through the mind-door —

' <i>Mano-Dvārāvajjana</i>	1
' <i>Javana</i> [immoral 12 + <i>Hasitubhāda</i> 1 + <i>Kāma</i> 16 + <i>Rūpa</i> 10 + <i>Arūpa</i> 8 + <i>Lokuttara</i> 8]	55
'Types of consciousness performing the function of <i>Tadā lambana</i> [ <i>Mahā-Vipāka</i> ]	

---

\*Types of consciousness that perform the function of *Tadā lambana* are altogether eleven, viz., *Mahāvipāka* 8 + *Santurana* 3 = 11 Here, the three types of *Santurana* consciousness have not been counted, as they have been already included above independently

XV *Tattha pañcadvārāvajjana-cakkhuvīññāna-sampācchana-santurana-votthapana-kāmāvacarajavana-tadārammana-vasena chacattālisa cittāni cakkhuvāre yathārahaṃ uppajjanti Tathā pañcadvārāvajjana-sotaviññānādivasena sotadvārādisu pi chacattāliseva bhavanti ti sabbathā pi pañcadvāre catupavīññāsa cittāni kāmāvacarānevā ti vedittabbāni*

8+ *Santīraṇa* 3]

11

—  
67'

(XVI a)

## (III)

*Types of consciousness that do not  
arise through any door*

'The nineteen types of consciousness, performing the functions of *Patisandhi*, *Bhavanga* and *Cuti*, do not arise through any door' (XVI b)

These are *Upekkhā Santīraṇa*\* 2+*Mahā-Vipāka*\* 8+*Mahaggata-Vipāka* 9=19 They are *Vipāka* or the resultant of previous Karmas They determine the nature of mental disposition of a being They are not thoughts arising at an impression, but they constitute the undercurrent of our mind, the activity of the sub-conscious, i.e., the flow of *Bhavanga*, the beginning and the end of which are *Patisandhi* and *Cuti* respectively

## (IV)

*Ekadoāraka Citta*

[*Types of consciousness that arise through only one door*]

'The following thirty-six types of consciousness arise through only one door —

XVI (a) *Manodvāre pana manodvārāvajjana-pañcapaññāsajavana-tadārammanavasena sattaṣaṭṭhi cittāni bhavanti*

(b) *Ekūnavasati patisandhi-bhavanga cutivasena dvāravimuttāni*

\*When these types of consciousness perform the function of *Tadārambana*, they do come in the course of cognition arising through the six doors

'*Dvīpañca-Viññāna* 10

'*Javana, Mahaggata* 18+*Lokuttara* 8 26

—  
36'

(XVII a)

Among the ten types of *Viññāna* consciousness, two arise only through eye-door, two only through ear door two only through nose-door, two only through tongue-door, and two only through touch door

The eighteen types of *Mahaggata Javana* (Moral 9+*Kīryā* 9), and the eight types of *Lokuttara* consciousness arise only through the mind-door

(V)

*Pañca-Dvārīka Cūṭa*

[Types of consciousness that arise only through the  
five doors of senses]

'The three simple mental-elements [*Pañca-Dvārāvajjana* 1+*Sampaticchana* 2=3] arise through all the five doors of senses' (XVII b)

(VI)

*Cha-Dvārīka*

[Types of consciousness that arise through all  
the six doors]

'The following types of consciousness arise through all the six doors —

---

XVII (a) Tesu pana dvīpañcaviññānāni ceva mahaggataloku-tara-javanāni ceti chattinsa yathāraham ekadvārīkacittāni nāma  
(b) Manodhātutṭikam pana pañcadvārīkam

'Somanassa-Santīrana	1
'Mano-Dvārāvajjana [=Voṭṭhapana]	1
'Kāmāvacara Javana	29
	—
	31'
	(XVII c)

## (VII)

*Cha-Dvārika and also Dvāra-Vimutta*

[Types of consciousness that may arise through all the six doors, and also may not arise through any door]

'The following types of consciousness arise through all the six doors, and also do not arise through any of them—

'Upekkhā Santīrana	2
'Mahā Vipāka	8
	—
	10'
	(XVII d)

When they perform the function of *Tadālambara*, they come in the course of cognition arising through the six doors. But when they function as *Patisandhi*, *Bhavanga* and *Cuti*, they do not arise through any door.

## (VIII)

*Dvāra Vimuttā-eva*

[Types of consciousness that are freed from the doors altogether]

'The nine types of *Mahaggata-Vipāka* consciousness are altogether freed from the doors' (XVII e)

(c) Sukhasantīrana-voṭṭhapana-kāmāvacarajavanāni chadvārikacittāni

(d) Upekkhāsahagatasantīrana-mahāvīpākāni chadvārikāni ceva dvāravimuttāni ca

(e) Mahaggatavīpākāni dvāravimuttānevā ti

As these are the types of resultant *Jhāna*-consciousness, they do not come in a thought-process of the *Kāmāvacara* arising through any of the six doors. They are, therefore, called *Dvāra-Vimutta* or 'door-freed'. They function only as *Bhavanga*, *Paṭisandhā* and *Cuti*.

#### RECAPITULATION

'There are five classes of the types of consciousness, according to their relation with the doors —

(1) 'Thirty-six types [*Dvi-Pañcaviññāna* 10 + *Mahagata-Lokuttara Javana* 26] arise through one door.

(2) 'Three types [*Pañca Dvārāvajjana* 1 + *Santīrana* 2] arise through the five doors of senses

(3) 'Thirty-one types [*Somanassa-Santīrana* 1 + *Votthapana* = *Manodvārāvajjana* 1 + *Kāma, Javana* 29] arise through all the six doors

(4) 'Ten types [*Upekkhā-Santīrana* 2 + *Mahāvīpākā* 8] arise through all the six doors, and are also independent of them

(5) 'Nine types [*Vīpākā, Rūpā* 5 + *Arūpā* 4] are altogether independent of the doors' (XVIII)

§5 *In relation to Ālambana or 'the object of consciousness'*

Consciousness is the relation that the subject has with the object, either material or ideational. It cannot be thought to have an independent existence of its own

---

XVIII Ekadvārikacittāni pañcachadvārikāni ca,  
Chadvārikavimuttāni vimuttāni ca sabbathā  
Chattunsati tathā tūni ekatimsa yathākkamam,  
Dasadhā navadhā ceti pañcadhā pandipaye



Now, we are going to discuss how many kinds of object are there and how they are related with the different types of consciousness

‘There are six kinds of the ‘object’ of consciousness, namely—(1) visible, (2) audible, (3) odorous, (4) sapid, (5) tactual and (6) ideational’ (XIX)

‘The ideational objects are again of six kinds, namely, (1) sensitive parts of the organs, (2) subtle material qualities, (3) consciousness,\* (4) psychic factors,\* (5) *Nibbāna* and (6) terms-and-concepts’ (XX)

They are related to consciousness in the following manner —

(A)

(1) *Objects of the types of consciousness arising through the six-doors*

‘Visible-form alone is the object of all the types of consciousness, arising through the eye-door. It should necessarily be presentative

‘In the same manner, sound is the object of all the types of consciousness arising through the ear-door, smell of all those arising through the nose door, taste of all those arising through the tongue-door, and touch of all those

XIX *Ārammansangahe ārammanāni nāma, rūpārammanam, saddārammanam, gandhārammanam rasārammanam, phoṭṭhabbārammanam, dhammārammanam ceti chabbidhāni bhavanti*

XX *Tattha rūpameva rūpārammanam Tathā saddādayo saddārammanādini Dhammārammanam pana pasāda-sukhumarūpa-citta-cetasika-nibbāna-paññattivasena chaddhā sangayhati*

\*By introspection, the states of consciousness and the psychic factors can be made the objects of our cognition

arising through the touch-door All of them must necessarily be presentative

‘But in the case of a type of consciousness arising through the mind-door, the above six objects may be either of the present, the past or the future, or even one that does not come in the boundary of time’ (XXI a)

(11) *Objects of the types of door-freed consciousness*

The types of consciousness that function as *Patisandhi*, *Bhavanga* and *Cuti* are called *Dvāra-Vimutta* or door-freed. ‘The objects of these types of consciousness may be all that have been experienced in the previous existence, both past or present at the time of death

The object of these types may also be a mental image, either (1) of the action mostly done in previous life, or (2) of the article generally associated with the action, or (3) a sign of the destiny that awaits’ (XXI b)

At the last moment of his life, when he is just sinking to death, the man gets a thought associated with what has been most prominent in his mind In a dreaming state, he feels as if he is engaged in doing an act which he has been doing mostly Thus, a murderer may get a vision that he is going to commit some crime, or is

---

XXI (a) Tattha cakkhudvārikacittānam sabbesampi rūpameva ārammanam Tañca paccuppannameva Tathā sotadvārikacittādānam pi saddādāni Tāni ca paccuppannāni yeva Manodvārikacittānam pana chabbidhampi paccuppannamatutam anāgatam kālavimuttam ca yathāraham ārammanam hoti

(b) Dvāravimuttānañca patisandhi-bhavanga-cutisankhātānam chabbidhampi yathāsambhavam yebhuyyena bhavantare chadvāragahitam paccuppannamatutam paññatibhūtam vā kammakammānimitta-gatanimuttasammatam ārammanam hoti

running after an enemy. A pious man, on the other hand, may feel as if he is worshipping the Buddha, or listening to a sermon, or taking the eight precepts. This is technically called *Kamma* or 'the vision of the action.'

Or, he may see a particular article generally associated with his action. The murderer may see a dagger, and the devotee the yellow robe. This is called *Kamma-Nimitta* or 'the vision of the article associated with the action.'

He may also get a vision of the hell fire, or of demons, if he has been a sinful man, and a sign of the higher abodes of the gods, if he has been righteous. This is called *Gati-Nimitta* or 'the vision of the sign of destiny'

(B)

(1) 'Form is the only object of eye-consciousness. Similarly, sound, smell, taste and touch are respectively the only objects of ear-consciousness, nose-consciousness, tongue-consciousness and touch-consciousness' (XXII a)

(2) 'The types of *Pañca-Dvārāvajjana* and *Sampaticchana* consciousness arise on all the five objects of senses, viz., form, sound, smell, taste and touch' (XXII b)

*Pañca-Dvārāvajjana* and the two *Sampaticchana*, these three types of consciousness, are together called *Manodhātutika* or the 'triple mind-element'. They arise on all the five objects of senses.

(3) 'The remaining types of *Kāmaṇvācāra-Vipākā* cons-

---

XXII (a) Tesu cakkhuvīññānādini yathākkamam rūpādiekekārammanāneva

(b) Manodhātutukam pana rūpāḍipañcārammaṇam

ciousness [*Santīraṇa* 3+*Mahā-Viṭṭhā* 8=11] and the *Hasitupphāda Citta* arise only on the objects of *Kāma-Loka* (XXII c)

These eleven types of consciousness function as either *Santīraṇā*, or *Tadālabhāna*, or *Paṭisandhi*, *Bhavanga* and *Cuti*, only on the objects of the *Kāma-Loka*. The functions of *Santīraṇa* and *Tadālabhāna* do not take place in the higher planes.

(iv) 'The [12] types of immortal, and the types of *Ñāna-Viṭṭhā Javana* [*Kusala* 4+*Kiriyā* 4] consciousness may arise on all the objects, with the exception of the Supra-mundane consciousness' (XXII d)

A man might feel conceited at the good actions that he does or at the attainment in *Jhāna*, and thus get an immoral consciousness having a moral one as its object.

Immoral consciousness, however, cannot arise on the *Lokuttara*, in which there remains no possibility for *Lobha*, *Dosa* and *Moha*.

The eight types of *Ñānaviṭṭhā Javana* may arise on the *Kāma*, *Rūpa* and *Arūpa* objects, but not on the *Lokuttara*.

*Sotāpanna*, *Sakadāgāmi* and *Anāgāmi* are fully acquainted with the *Lokuttara* stages they have already attained, but, when their consciousness is *Kāma-vacāra Ñāna-Viṭṭhā Kusala*, they are not aware of them. They know them only when their consciousness is *Ñāna-Samphayutta*,

---

(c) *Sesāni kāmāvacaravipākāni hasanacittaṇi ceti sabbathā pi kāmāvacarārammanāneva*

(d) *Akusalāni ceva ñānaviṭṭhāyuttakāmāvacara-javanāni ceti lokuttara-vajjitasabbārammanāni*

1 e, when they draw their attention to them

Similarly, in the case of a *Kāmāvacara Ñāna-Viṇṇayutta Kiriyā* consciousness, the Arhat is not conscious of the *Lokuttara* stages, though he knows them most perfectly

(v) 'The [4] types of *Kāmāvacara* moral consciousness accompanied by knowledge, and the moral Super-intellection consciousness of the fifth stage of *Jhāna*, arise on all objects, with the exception of *Arahatta Magga* and *Phala* '

(XXII e)

The object of the type of *Kāmāvacara Ñāna-Sampayutta Kusala* consciousness of the *Anāgāmi* might be any of the *Kāma*, *Rūpa* or *Arūpa* ones, or a stage of the *Lokuttara*, up to his own attainment, but not beyond that

(vi) 'The following types of consciousness may arise on all objects whatsoever —

(a) 'The types of *Kāmāvacara Kiriyā* consciousness accompanied by knowledge

(b) 'The super-intellection consciousness of the Arhat.

(c) '*Votthapana* or the determining consciousness'.

(XXII f)

The object of the type of the Arhat's *Kāmāvacara Ñāna-Sampayutta Kiriyā* consciousness may be one belonging to any plane of existence. In a super-intellection consciousness of the fifth stage of *Jhāna*, the Arhat can know anything

(e) Ñānasampayuttakāmāvacarakusalāni ceva pañcamajjhānasāṅkhātāni abhiññākusalāni ceti arahattamaggaphalavajjutta-sabbārammanāni

(f) Ñānasampayuttakāmāvacarakiriyāni ceva kiriyābhiññāvotthapanāni ceti sabbathā pi sabbārammanāni

of any plane, either past, present, future or distant

The type of *Manodvārāvajjana* (= *Votthopana*) consciousness may arise on the objects of all the planes of existence, for, it does the most essential function of reflecting, without which no thought may be possible

(vi) 'The second and the fourth *Arūpa*-consciousness [*Viññāṇaṇcāyatana* and *Nevaśaññānāsaññāyatana*] have 'real infinity' as their objects. The objects of the other types of *Mahaggata*-consciousness are subjective images or concepts' (XXII g)

*Anantākāsa* or the infinity of space and *Ākiñcaṇṇa* or nothingness, have no real existence. They are but subjective concepts

(vii) '*Nibbāna* is the object of all the types of Supramundane consciousness' (XXII h)

#### RECAPITULATION

The objects of consciousness have been discussed under seven classifications, as below —

(1) 'Twenty-five types of consciousness [*Kāmaṇṣṣāpāka* 23 + *Pañcadvārāvajjana* 1 + *Hasitupphāda* 1 = 25] arise only on the objects of *Kāma-Loka*

(2) 'Six types of consciousness [*Viññāṇaṇcāyatana* 3 + *Nevaśaññānāsaññā* 3 = 6] have real infinity as their object

(3) 'Twenty-one types of consciousness [*Rūpa* 15 + *Ākāsāṇaṇcāyatana* 3 + *Ākiñcaṇṇāyatana* 3 = 21] have as their objects subjective images and concepts

---

(g) *Āruppesu* dutiyacatutthāni mahaggatārammanāni. *Sesāni mahaggatacittāni sabbāni pi paññattārammanāni*

(h) *Lokuttaracittāni nibbānārammanāni*

(4) 'Eight types of consciousness [*Magga* 4+*Phala* 4] have *Nibbāna* as their object

(5) 'Twenty types of consciousness [immortal 12+*Kāmāvacara Ñāna-Vip̐payutta*, *Kusala* 4+*Kiriyā* 4] have for their objects all others excepting the *Lokuttara*

(6) 'Five types of consciousness [*Kāmāvacara Ñāna-Sampayutta Kusala* 4+*Kusalābhññā* 1] arise on all objects, with the exception of the *Arahatta Magga* and *Phala*

(7) 'Six types of consciousness [*Kāmāvacara Ñāna-Sampayutta Kiriyā* 4+*Kiriyā Abhiññā* 1+*Votthapana* 1] arise on all kinds of objects' (XXIII)

#### §6 In relation to 'Vatthu' or organs

'The organs are six in number, viz, (1) eye, (2) ear, (3) nose, (4) tongue, (5) skin and (6) heart

'All the six organs are found in the *Kāma*-world. Nose, tongue and skin, these three organs, do not exist in the *Rūpa*-world. In the *Arūpa*-world, there are no organs at all' (XXIV)

#### (I)

'The five types of sensation (*Viññāna*) arise depending only on their respective organs'. (XXV a)

XXIII Pañca-vaṣa parittamhi, cha cittāni mahaggate,

Ekavīsati vohāre atṭha nibbāna-gocare

Visānuttaramuttamhi, aggamagga-phaluyyite

Pañca, sabbattha chacceti sattadhā tattha sangaho

XXIV Vatthu-sangahe, vatthūni nāma, cakkhu-sotaghāna-  
jivhā-kāya-hadayavatthu cāti chabbidhāni bhavanti

Tāni kāma-loke sabbāni pi labbhanti Rūpa-loke pana ghānā-  
dittayam natthi Arūpa-loke pana sabbāni pi na sanvijjanti

XXV (a) Tattha pañca-viññāna-dhātuyo yathākkamam ekantena  
pañca pasāda-vatthūni nissāyeva pavattanti

## (II)

‘*Mano-Dhātu* (simple cognition) i e , the two *Sampaticchana* and the *Pañca-Dvārāvajjana* consciousness, arise depending on the heart-organ ’ (XXV b)

## (III)

‘The types of *Mano-Viññāna* (reflective cognition) consciousness, such as—

*Santīrana* [3], *Mahā Vipāka* [8], *Paṭigha* [2], *Sotāpatti Magga* [1], *Hasituppāda* [1], and *Rūpāvacara* [15] arise depending on the heart ’ (XXV c)

## (IV)

‘The remaining types of immoral, moral, inoperative and Supra-mundane consciousness arise depending on the heart organ and also independent of it’ (XXV d)

## (V)

‘The types of *Arūpa-Vipāka* consciousness arise independent of the heart ’ (XXV e)

## RECAPITULATION

(i) In *Kāma-Loka* the seven kinds of cognition\* arise depending on the six organs

(ii) ‘In *Rūpa-Loka* the four kinds of cognition [*Cakkhu-*

(b) *Pañca-dvārāvajjana-sampaticchanasankhātā* pana *mano-dhātū* ca hadayam nissitā yeva pavattanti

(c) *Avasesā* pana *mano-viññāna-dhātu-sankhātā* ca *santīrana-mahāvīpāka-paṭighadvaya-pathmamagga-hasana-rūpāvacara-vasena* hadayam nissāyeva pavattanti

(d) *Avasesā* *kusalākusala-kriyānuttara-vasena* pana *nissāya vā anissāya vā*

(e) *Arūpa-vipāka-vasena* hadayam anissāyevā ti

\*The seven kinds of cognition are —

(a) *Mano-Dhātu*, (b) *Mano-Viññāna-Dhātu* and (c) the five *Viññāna* (eye-consciousness and others)



*Viññāna-Dhātu* + *Sota-Viññāna Dhātu* + *Mano-Dhātu* + *Mano-Viññāna-Dhātu*] arise depending on three organs, viz , eye, ear and heart

(iii) 'In *Arūpa-Loka*, cognition exists by itself independent of the six organs

(iv) 'The following forty-three types of consciousness arise depending on the six organs —

<i>Kāma-Vipāka</i>	23
<i>Pañca-Dvārāvajjana</i>	1
<i>Hasituppāda</i>	1
<i>Paṭigha</i>	2
<i>Rūpāvacara</i>	15
<i>Sotāpatti-Magga</i>	1
	<hr/>
	43

(v) 'The following forty-two types of consciousness arise depending on the six organs, and also exist independent of them —

<i>Akusala</i> , [except the two types of <i>Paṭigha</i> ]	10
<i>Manodvārāvajjana</i>	1
<i>Kāma</i> , <i>Kusala</i> + <i>Kiriyā</i>	16
<i>Arūpa</i> , <i>Kusala</i> + <i>Kiriyā</i>	8
<i>Lokuttara</i> , except <i>Sotāpatti-Magga</i>	7
	<hr/>
	42

(vi) 'The four types of *Arūpa-Vipāka* consciousness do not depend upon the organs' (XXVI)

XXVI Cha vatthum nissitā kāme satta, rūpe catubbidhā  
Tivattum nissitarūpe dhātvekānissitā matā  
Tecattālisa nissāya dvecattālisa jāyare  
Nissāya ca anissāya pākāruppā anissitā

(a)

*Manodhātu*

*Pañca-Dvārāvayjana* and *Sampaticchana* are the types of simple cognition in which the object is taken just as it presents itself, without referring it to previous experiences. They are called *Mano-Dhātu*.

(b)

*Mano-Viññāna-Dhātu*

In *Santīraṇa* and the higher types of consciousness, the object is interpreted in the light of the previous knowledge accumulated by the subject. If the object is very dear, the consciousness is accompanied by an amount of *Somanassa* even at the stage of *Santīraṇa*. *Votthapana* consciousness gives the object a definite location in the field of knowledge. All the types of *Javana* consciousness are the activities of the subject directed towards the object. Finally, the *Tadālamāna* holds the experiences in the sub-conscious and registers them in it. These types of consciousness are called *Mano-Viññāna-Dhātu* or the reflective cognition.

(c)

*Dvīpañcaviññāna*

In the five types of sensory-consciousness the objects appear merely as stimuli, giving sensations, either of the eye, ear, nose, tongue or touch. They are neither *Mano-Dhātu* nor *Manoviññāna-Dhātu*. They are called *Dvīpañcaviññāna* or the five-fold sense-cognition.

These types of consciousness cannot arise in the *Arūpa-Loka* where there are no organs at all. A being of the

*Arūpa-Loka* will not have the types of *Vipāka*-consciousness of the *Kāma-Loka*, as, their objects essentially belong to this very *Loka*

He has no organs at all, and so he cannot get an antipathy against any object. Therefore, the two types of *Patigha*-consciousness, rooted in *Dosa*, will not arise in him.

He cannot obtain the *Sotāpatti-Magga*-consciousness for which it is necessary to realise the *Dukkha* (miserable) nature of all existence, the first Noble Truth. The organs being absent in him, he does not receive impressions from the external world, and, therefore, cannot realise it.

CHAPTER IV  
CITTA-VĪTHI  
[Course of Cognition]

SECTION I  
PAÑCADVĀRA-VĪTHI

(Course of cognition through the five doors of senses)

§1 Introductory

‘Having thus examined the different states of consciousness in due order, herein we are going to discuss in brief, as far as possible, the process of mind, both in \**Paṭisandhi* and \**Pavatti*, according to the different life-planes and persons’ (I)

\**Paṭisandhi*-consciousness is the activity of *Bhavanga* beginning a new life. Its nature is determined by the *Karmic* result of previous birth, having its object either *Kamma*, *Kamma-Nimitta* or *Gatī-Nimitta*

*Pavatti*-consciousness is the process of cognition that takes place in our life when an impression is received, either objective or ideational

§2 Six classes of six kinds

‘To understand the course of cognition, we must know the six classes of six kinds, namely —

---

I Cīttupādānamiccevaṃ katvā saṅgahamuttaram,  
Bhūmi-puggala-bhedena pubbāpara-niyāmitam  
Pavatti-saṅgaham nāma paṭisandhi-pavattiyam  
Pavakkhāmi samāseṇa yathāsambhavāto katham

- (1) 'Six organs
- (2) 'Six doors
- (3) 'Six objects
- (4) 'Six kinds of cognition
- (5) 'Six courses of cognition
- (6) 'Six kinds of presentation of the objects' (II)

'The types of consciousness functioning as *Paṭisandhi*, *Bhavanga* and *Cuti*\* have, for their objects, at the time of death, either *Kamma*, *Kamma-Nimitta* or *Gati-Nimitta*' (III)

'Organs, doors and objects have been already discussed in the previous chapter' (IV)

'The six kinds of cognition are —eye-consciousness, ear-consciousness, nose-consciousness, tongue-consciousness, touch-consciousness, and reflective consciousness' (V)

'According to the doors through which the courses of cognition take place, they are called —

- (1) the course of eye-door cognition,
- (2) the course of ear-door cognition,
- (3) the course of nose door cognition,
- (4) the course of tongue-door cognition,

II Cha vatthūni, cha dvārāni, cha ārammanāni, cha viññānāni, cha vithiyo, chadhā visayappavatti ceti vithi-sangahe cha chakkāni veditabbāni

\*The types of consciousness functioning as *Paṭisandhi*, *Bhavanga* and *Cuti* are not thought-moments in the course of cognition. They are, therefore, called *Vithi-Mutta* or those that do not come in the course of cognition.

III Vithi-muttānam pana kamma-kammanimitta-gatinimittavāsena tividhā hoti visayappavatti

IV Tattha vatthu-dvārārammanāni pubbe vuttanayāneva

V Cakkhu-viññānam, sota-viññānam, ghāna-viññānam, jivhā-viññānam, kāya-viññānam, mano Viññānam ceti cha viññānāni

(5) the course of touch-door cognition, and

(6) the course of mind-door cognition

‘Or, according to the kinds of consciousness, they are called —

(1) the course of eye-consciousness-cognition,

(2) the course of ear-consciousness-cognition,

(3) the course of nose-consciousness-cognition,

(4) the course of tongue-consciousness-cognition,

(5) the course of touch-consciousness cognition, and

(6) the course of reflective-consciousness cognition’

(VI)

§3 *Citta-kkhana (thought-moment) and*  
*Citta Vīthi (course of cognition)*

The passive state of mind, when it is having its own smooth course, is called *Bhavanga*. All thoughts rise up on its surface and sink down in it. Ordinarily, it is not possible for us to hold a thought up and check it from sinking.

A thought may be compared to a wave in the sea. The wave rises up from the surface of the sea, is seen above for a while and then sinks down, giving rise to another, and that also to another. Just like that, a thought rises up on the surface of the *Bhavanga*, is felt above, and then sinks down, giving rise to another, and

---

VI Cha vithiyo pana cakkhu - dvāra-vithi, sota-dvāra-vithi, ghāna-dvāra-vithi, jivhā-dvāra-vithi, kāya-dvāra-vithi, mano-dvāra-vithi, ceti dvāravasena vā Cakkhu-viññāna-vithi, sota-viññāna-vithi, ghāna-viññāna-vithi, jivhā-viññāna-vithi, kāya-viññāna-vithi, manoviññāna-vithi, ceti viññāna-vasena vā dvārappavattā cittappavattiyo yojetabbā

that to another. Thus, a thought has three stages, namely, (1) *Uppāda* or rising up, (2) *Thiti* or remaining up on the surface, and (3) *Bhanga* or sinking down. The life of a thought, from rising up to sinking down, is called a *Citta-kkhana* or a 'thought-moment'.

When an impression is received through any of the five senses,

(1) it causes a vibration in the smooth flow of the *Bhavanga* for one thought-moment, which is called *Bhavanga-Calana*

(2) Then, the flow gets arrested for one moment, which is called *Bhavangupaccheda* or the cessation of *Bhavanga*

Then, upon the same impression, there occur the following thought-moments, one by one in quick succession, rising up and sinking down —

(3) *Pañcā-Dvārāvajjana*

(4) *Cakkhu-Viññāna*, or any of the other four

(5) *Sampaticchana*.

(6) *Santīrana*

(7) *Votthapana*.

(8-14) *Javana*. It, being a much stronger thought than the others, is repeated seven times

(15-16) *Tadālabana*. It is holding the experience and registering it in the sub-conscious, which is repeated twice

Thus, from *Bhavanga Calana* to the sinking down of the second *Tadālabana*, there are altogether sixteen thought-moments, which complete a course of cognition

of the five doors of senses, called the *Pañcā-Dvāra-Viññu*

When we see, hear, smell, taste or touch a thing, we get thousands of *Viññu* on it. We cognise the thing again and again, and, each time, register its experience in the sub-conscious.

While reading a book, we cognise each letter one by one, and go on registering their experience as they pass before us. Thus, we get the meaning of the word. Similarly, cognising each word, one by one, and registering its experience, we get the meaning of the sentence.

#### §4 *Relative parallelism between mind and matter*

The things of the world appear to be stationary, but, in reality, they are in a state of continuous flux. They can be compared to the light of the lamp which seems to be steady but is actually renewing itself every moment. This is the 'Law of Anicca' in Buddhist philosophy.

But if the objects are so very fleeting, how can a course of cognition (*Citta-Viññu*) be possible on it, which requires as many as sixteen thought-moments to complete itself? The *Abhidhamma* explains it by maintaining that the speed of the flow of the object is sixteen times less than that of consciousness.

The object takes one thought-moment to come into existence, and is then received by the mind at the second. Thus, the life-duration of an unit of the objective existence is altogether for seventeen thought-moments. At the end of the seventeenth thought-moment, the course of



cognition (*Citta-Vūṭhi*) is complete, and a life-moment of the object has also expired

### §5 *Strength of the impression*

(1) If the impression of the object is very distinct, it is received only one moment after it has taken its rise. Then the course of cognition (*Citta Vūṭhi*) follows on it, and completes itself in sixteen thought-moments, at the end of which, the life-moment of the object is also over. Such an object is called *Ati-Mahanta* or very distinct.

(2) If the impression of the object is not so strong as above, it is received a bit late after it has taken its rise, so it dies out in the middle before the course of cognition is complete. It survives only as far as the consciousness has reached its *Javana*-stage. Therefore, the thought moments of *Tadālamhana* do not arise on it. Such an object is called *Mahanta* or 'distinct'.

(3) If the impression of the object is still weaker, it is received still late after it has taken its rise, so it dies out even before the *Javana* stage is reached. In this case, the *Votthapana* thought-moment is repeated twice or thrice, and then it sinks down to *Bhavanga*. Such an object is called *Paritta* or 'slight'.

(4) If the impression of the object is very weak, it is received too late after it has taken its rise, so it dies out only after creating a vibration in the *Bhavanga*, before any thought moment can take its rise on it. Such an object is called *Ati-Paritta* or 'very slight'.

(5) If the ideational impression of the mind-door is

quite clear and vivid, a full course of cognition (*Citta-Vīṭhi*) takes place on it, registering the experience by the two thought-moments of *Tadālamāna*. Such an ideational impression is called *Vibhūta* or 'clear'

(6) If the ideational impression is faint and obscure, the course of cognition can proceed only up to the *Javana* stage, after which, it sinks down in the *Bhavanga*. There are no *Tadālamāna* thought-moments in this case. Such an ideational impression is called *Avibhūta* or 'obscure'

'The six kinds of presentation of the objects are —

(A) At the five doors of senses

- (1) '*Ati Mahanta* or very distinct
- (2) '*Mahanta* or distinct
- (3) '*Paritta* or slight
- (4) '*Ati Paritta* or very slight

(B) At the mind-door

- (5) '*Vibhūta* or clear
- (6) '*Avibhūta* or obscure' (VII)

§6 *Ati-Mahanta Ālamāna* or 'very distinct object'

(C) 'A thought-moment consists of three moments, viz., (1) rising up, (2) remaining and (3) sinking down. Seventeen of such thought moments constitute the duration of a unit of material existence. The five objects of senses are received at the five doors, late by either one

---

VII *Ati-mahantam, mahantam, parittam, atiparittam, ceti pañcadvāre Mano-dvāre vibhūtamavibhūtam ceti chadhā visayapavatti veditabbā*

thought-moment or many, after they have come into existence ' (VIII a)

'Therefore, if the eye has caught sight of a visible form, a moment late after it has come into existence, then the *Bhavanga* is vibrated two times and its flow gets arrested. Then, turning towards the same object, there arises the *Pañcadvārāvajjana*-consciousness and sinks down into *Bhavanga*. Then, viewing the same form, there arise the 'eye-consciousness', receiving it as an object, there arises the 'recipient consciousness,' investigating it in the light of its previous experience, there arises 'investigating consciousness', and determining it as a particular thing, there arises 'determining consciousness' one after another in quick succession ' (VIII b)

'Then, the thought-moment of active consciousness (*Javana*) is repeated seven times, which may be, as the case is, one of the twenty-nine types of *Kāmāvacāra Javana Citta* (immoral 12+good 16+*Hasitupphāda* 1=29). Following the *Javana*, there arise two thought-moments of the registering consciousness (*Tadālamhana*), and then it sinks

VIII (a) Katham ? Uppādaṭṭhitubhanga-vasena khaṇattayam eka-citta-kkhanam nāma. Tāni pana sattarasacittakkhanāni rūpadhammānamāyu. Eka-cittakkhanānūtāni vā bahucittakkhanānūtāni vā ṭhitupattāneva pañcārammnāni pañcadvāre āpāthamāgacchanti.

(b) Tasmā, yadī ekacittakkhanānūtakam rūpārammanam cakkhussa āpāthamāgacchati, tato param dvikkhattum bhavange calite bhavanga-sotam vocchinditvā tameva rūpārammanam āvajjantam pañcadvārāvajjanacittam uppajjtvā nirujjhati. Tato tassānantaram tameva rūpam passantam cakkhu-viññānam, Sampaṭicchantam sampaṭicchana-cittam, Santarayamānam santuranacittam, Vavatthapentam voṭṭhapanacittam ceti yathākkamam uppajjtvā nirujjanti.

down into *Bhavanga* ' (VIII c)

'Thus, the object survives for the full course of cognition (*Citta-Vithi*) consisting of seventeen thought-moments, as under —

' <i>Vithi-Citta</i> *	..	—	14
'Vibration of the <i>Bhavanga</i>	.	..	2
'One thought-moment that the object			
takes to be received	..	—	1
			<hr/>
			17

'At the end of that, the phase of the object has also passed away Such an object is called 'very distinct' (IX a)

#### §7 *Mahanta Ālambana* or 'distinct object'

'An object is called *Mahanta* or 'distinct,' if its impression is received a bit late after it has come into existence, and is, therefore, unable to survive till the *Tadāḷambana* stage is reached It sinks down into the *Bhavanga*, only at the end of *Javana* consciousness, and the *Tadāḷambana*-consciousness does not at all get an opportunity to arise ' (IX b)

(c) Tato param ekūnatimsa-kāmāvacarajavanesu yam kiñci laddha-ppaccayam yebbhuyena sattakkhattum javatī Javanānubandhāni ca dve tadārammanapākāni yathāraham pavattanti Tato param bhavangapāto

\**Vithi-Citta*=Pañcadvārāvajjana 1+ Cakkhuvijñāna 1+ Sampatichana 1+ Santirana 1+ Voṭṭhapanā 1+ Javana 7+ *Tadāḷambana* 2=14

IX (a) Ettāvatā cūddasa vithicittuppadā, dve bhavangacalanāni, pubbevatītakamekacittakkhananti katvā sattarasacittakkhanāni paripūrenti tato param nrujjhatī Ārammanametam atimahantam nāma gocaram

(b) Yāva tadārammanuppadā pana appahontātītakamāpāthamā-gatam ārammanam mahantam nāma Tattha javanāvasāne bhavangapāto va hotī, natthi tadārammanuppadō

§8 *Parittāmbana* or 'slight object'

'An object is called *Paritta* or 'slight,' if its impression is received still late after it has come into existence, and is, therefore, unable to survive till the *Javana* stage is reached. *Javana* consciousness does not arise in this case, but it sinks down into *Bhavanga*, only after the *Votthapana*-thought-moment, repeating itself two or three times.' (IX c)

§9 *Ati-Paritta Āmbana* or 'very slight object'

'An object is called *Ati-Paritta* or 'very slight', if its impression is received very late after it has come into existence and is, therefore, unable to survive even up to the *Votthapana* stage, but dies out only after producing a vibration in the *Bhavanga*. In this case, no thought-moment can arise' (IX d)

§10 *Kinds of presentation of the objects at the five doors of senses*

The following are the four kinds of presentation of the objects at the five doors of senses —

(1) '*Tadāmbana-Vāra*, that which survives as long as the *Tadāmbana*-consciousness

(2) '*Javana-Vāra*, that which survives as long as the *Javana*-consciousness

---

(c) Yāva javanuppādā pi appahontātītakamāpāthamāgatam āramanam parittam nāma Tattha javanampi anuppajjivā dvitikkhattum votthapanameva pavattati, tato param bhavangapāto va hoti

(d) Yāva votthapanuppādā ca pana appahontātītakamāpāthamāgatam nirodhāsannamārammanam atiparittam nāma Tattha bhavanga-calanameva hoti, natthi vithicittuppadō

(3) *Votthapana-Vāra*, that which survives as long as the *Votthapana*-consciousness

(4) *Mogha-Vara*, that which causes but a vibration in the *Bhavanga* ' (IX e)

### §11 Summing up

'At the five doors of senses, there arise —

(I) 'Only seven stages of thought-moments in the course of cognition [viz , (1) *Pañca-Dvārāvajjana*, (2) either of the *Pañca-Viññāna*, (3) *Sampaticchana*, (4) *Santīrana*, (5) *Votthapana*, (6) *Javana* and (7) *Tadālamhana*],

(II) 'fourteen thought-moments [viz , *Pañcadvārāvajjana* 1 + either of the *Pañca-Viññāna* 1 + *Sampaticchana* 1 + *Santīrana* 1 + *Votthapana* 1 + *Javana* 7 + *Tadālamhana* 2 = 14],

(III) 'fifty-four types of consciousness in all [the 54 types of *Kāmāvacara* consciousness]' (X)

## SECTION II

### *Mano-Dvāra-Vithi-Citta*

(Cognition through the mind-door)

The objects of the mind-door-cognition are ideational. They are either of the *Kāmaloka*, as in memory, reflection or introspection, or of the *Mahaggata*, as the after-image of a *Kammatthāna*, or the concepts of the formless, or of the *Lokuttara*, being *Nibbāna*.

The ideational object of the *Kāmaloka* is either clear

(e) *Icevā cakkhu-dvāre tathā sotadvārādisu ceti sabbathāpi pañcadvāre tadārammana-javana-votthapana-moghavārasankhātānam catunnam vārānam yathākkamam ārammanabhūtā visayappavatticatuddhā veditabbā*

X *Vithicittāni satteva cittuppadā catuddasa, Catupaññāsa vitthārā pañcadvāre yathāraham*

called by the names of (1) *Parikamma* (=preparation), (2) *Upacāra* (=proximation), (3) *Anuloma* (=bending towards the higher plane) and *Gotrabhu* (=one, leaving the former plane and entering the higher)

At the end of *Appanā Javana*, there is no *Tadālabana*-consciousness, as, in this case, the object is not one of the *Kāma-Loka*.

§12 *Kāmāvacara Mano-Dvāra Citta-Vithu* or  
'the course of cognition through the mind-door  
on an object of the *Kāmaloka*'

'If a 'clear' ideational object is received through the mind-door then the *Bhavanga* gets vibrated [for two thought-moments], then, there arises a thought-moment of *Mano-Dvārāvajjana*, then, there arise [seven thought-moments of] *Javana*, then, there arise [two thought-moments of] *Tadālabana*, and then, it sinks down into the *Bhavanga*

'If the ideational object is 'obscure', the consciousness sinks down into *Bhavanga*, only after the *Javana* consciousness. The *Tadālabana* consciousness does not even arise in this case' (XI).

#### RECAPITULATION

'In the course of cognition arising through the mind-door, there are three kinds of thought-moments [viz ,

---

XI *Mano-dvāre pana yadi vibhūtamālabanam āpāthamāgacchati, tatoparam bhavangacalana-manodvārāvajjana-javanāvasane tadālabana-pākāni pavattanti, tato param bhavanga-pāto*

*Avibhūte ālabane javanāvasāne bhavangapāto va hoti, natthi tadālabanuppādo*

*Mano-Dvārāvajjana*, *Javana* and *Tadālabhāna*], and ten thought-moments in all [viz, *Mano-Dvārāvajjana* 1 + *Javana* 7 + *Tadālabhāna* 2]

‘There are altogether forty-one types of [*Kāmāvacara*] consciousness that may arise in the course of this cognition’ (XII)

The following thirteen types of *Kāmāvacara* consciousness cannot arise in this course of cognition —

eye-consciousness + ear-consciousness +	
nose-consciousness + tongue-consciousness +	
touch consciousness	10
<i>Pañcadvārāvajjana</i>	1
<i>Sampaticchana</i>	2
	<hr/>
	13

Therefore, only 54—13=41 types of consciousness may arise in this case

It should be noted that *Santīraṇa* 3 and *Mahāvīpākā* 8, these eleven types, come in the *Mano-dvāra-Vīthi* as *Tadālabhāna* only

§13 *Appanā-javana-vāra Citta-vīthi* (The course of cognition that reaches to *Jhāna*)

‘The question of the ideational object being ‘clear’ or ‘obscure’ does not arise in the course of cognition reaching up to the active consciousness of ecstasy (*Jhāna*), either *Mahaggata* or *Lokuttara Tadārammana*-consciousness

---

XII Vīthi-cittāni tūveva cittuppadā dāseritā  
Vīthāreṇa panetthekacattāṇi vibhāvaye



also does not arise in this case. At the *Javana*-stage three or four thought-moments, named *Parikamma*, *Upacāra*, *Anuloma* and *Gotrabhu*, belonging to one of the eight types of the *Kāmāvacara* *Ñānasampayutta* consciousness, arise one after another. The fourth or the fifth thought-moment is one of the *Jhānic* state belonging to any of the twenty-six types of the *Mahaggata* and *Lokuttara* *Javana*-consciousness [*Mahaggata* 18 + *Lokuttara* 8 = 26], as the case might be. At the end of the *Jhāna*, the consciousness again falls back into *Bhavanga* ' (XIII)

'The *Appanā* (= *Jhāna*) consciousness is accompanied by *Somanassa*,\* if the preceding four *Kāma-javana* thought-moments are accompanied by it, and it is accompanied

---

XIII Appanā-javanavāre pana vibhūtā vibhūtabhedo natthi. Tathā tadārammanuppādo ca. Tattha hi ñānasampayuttakāmāvacara-javanānāmaṭṭhannam aññatarasmim parikammopacārānulomagotrabhunāmena catukkhattum tikkhattumeva vā yathākkamam uppaṭṭivā niruddhānantarameva yathārahām catuttham pañcamam vā chabbisati mahaggata-lokuttara-jāvanesu yathābhūnihāravasena yam kiñci jāvanam appanāvithumotarati, tato param appanā-javanāvasāne bhavangapāto va hoti.

\*(a) The types of Kusala Appanā-consciousness accompanied by Somanassa are the following —

Rūpa [the first four stages of Jhāna accompanied by Sukha]	4
Magga [Magga 4 × Jhāna 4]	16
Phala [the first three Phala × Jhāna 4]	12
	—
	32

(b) The types of Kiriya Appanā-consciousness accompanied by Somanassa are the following —

Rūpa [the first four stages of Jhāna]	4
Lokuttara [Arahatta-Phala 1 × Jhāna 4]	4
	—
	8

by *Upekkhā\** if they are also accompanied by the same

‘If the preceding four *Javana* thought-moments are *Kusala* [i.e., of a non-Arhat] then the *Appanā-Javana* is also *Kusala*, and if they are *Kiriyā* [i.e., of an Arhat] then it is also *Kiriyā*

‘*Sotāpanna*, *Sakadāgāmi* and *Anāgāmi* can obtain the *Phala*-consciousness up to the stage they have already realised. The Arhat alone can obtain the *Arahatta-Phala* consciousness’ (XIV)

#### RECAPITULATION

‘The *Puthujjanas* (=worldlings) and the *Sekkhās* (= *Sotāpanna*, *Sakadāgāmi* and *Anāgāmi*) obtain 32 types of *Somanassa-Sahagata* and 12 types of *Upekkhā-Sahagata* *Appanā*-consciousness, immediately after a type of the *Kāmāvacara Nānasampayutta Kusala-Javana* [See p 337]

‘The Arhat obtains 8 types of *Somanassa-Sahagata* and

---

\*(a) The types of *Kusala Appanā*-consciousness accompanied by *Upekkhā* are the following —

<i>Rūpa</i> , the fifth stage of <i>Jhāna</i>	1
<i>Arūpa</i>	4
<i>Lokuttara</i> [except <i>Arahatta-Phala</i> ]	7
	<hr/>

12

(b) The types of *Kiriyā Appanā*-consciousness accompanied by *Upekkhā* are the following —

<i>Rūpa</i> , the fifth stage of <i>Jhāna</i>	1
<i>Arūpa</i>	4
<i>Lokuttara</i> , <i>Arahatta-Phala</i>	1
	<hr/>

6

XIV Tattha somanassasahagatajavanānantaram appanā pi somanassasahagatā va paṭṭikankhitabbā Upekkhāsahagatajavanānantaram upekkhāsahagatā va Tatthāpi kusala-javanānantaram kusala-javanam ceva hetṭhimam ca phalattayamappeti Kiriya-javanānantaram kiriya-javanam arahattaphalaṃ cā ti

six types of *Upekkhā-Sahagata Appanā*-consciousness, immediately after a type of the *Kāmāvacara Ñānasampayutta Kiriya Javana'* (XV)

## SECTION III

## (A)

§14 *Tadāmbana*

(*The types of registering consciousness*)

A present experience in the world of desires is registered by the consciousness in the light of our disposition towards the object, which is a resultant of the previous Karmas. Therefore, the types of consciousness that perform the function of *Tadāmbana* (registering) are the eleven *Vipāka*-consciousness, viz, the three *Santirana* and the eight *Mahā Vipāka*.

If the *Santirana* is accompanied by an amount of delight, in the case of a very dear object, the *Tadāmbana* consciousness is also accompanied by the same. The types of *Tadāmbana* consciousness, being very weak, can not be accompanied by antipathy.

*Tadāmbana* consciousness is the outcome of one's previous experiences. A man may meditate on a seemingly beautiful object to be full of evils, but the *Tadāmbana* is sure to get an amount of delight over it. Similarly, a man may practise friendliness on the serpent, but in the *Tadāmbana* he will have only *Upekkhā*, and no delight.

---

XV Dvattimsasukhapuññamhā dvādasopekkhakā param  
Sukhutakriyato aṭṭha cha sambhonti upekkhakā  
Putthujjanāna sekkhānam kāmapiñña-tihetuto,  
Tihetukāmakriyato vitarāgānamappanā

The Arhat alone can exercise a control over the *Tadālabhāna*, which, in his case, is of the same nature as that of his *Javana*

‘Under all circumstances, if an object be undesirable, it is the resultant of previous immoral Karmas taking effect in *Pañca-Viññāna*, *Sampaticchana*, *Santīrana* and *Tadālabhāna*. If an object is desirable, it is the resultant of previous moral Karmas. And, if it be extremely desirable, both the *Santīrana* and the *Tadālabhāna* are accompanied by delight’ (XVI a)

‘If the *Javana* of the Arhat is accompanied by delight his *Tadālabhāna* will also be accompanied by it, and if it is accompanied by *Upekkhā* his *Tadālabhāna* will also be accompanied by the same’ (XVI b)

‘At the end of a *Javana* accompanied by *Domanassa*, both the *Tadālabhāna* and the *Bhavanga* moments are accompanied by *Upekkhā*. Hence when an individual of a joyful disposition gets no *Tadālabhāna* at the end of a *Javana* accompanied by *Domanassa*, then there arises an *Upekkhā-Santīrana* consciousness on any object of the *Kāmaloka* that he was familiar with in the past. Teachers say that it sinks down into *Bhavanga* just after that’ (XVIIa)

---

XVI (a) Sabbathā pi panetha anitthe ārammane akusalavipākānva pañcaviññāna-sampaticchana santīrana-tadārammanāni. Itthe kusala-vipākāni Atitthe pana somanassasahagatāneva santīrana-tadārammanāni

(b) Tatthāpi somanassasahagatakriyājavanāvasāne somanassasahagatāneva tadārammanāni bhavanti. Upekkhāsahagatakriyājavanāvasāne ca upekkhāsahagatāni honti

XVII (a) Domanassasahagatajavanāvasāne pana tadāramma-nāni ceva bhavangāni ca upekkhāsahagatāni eva bhavanti. Tasmāyadā somanassapatisandhikassa domanassa-sahagatajavanāvasāne tadā

‘*Tadālabhāna* is possible only (1) at the end of a *Kāmāvacara Javana*, only (2) with the beings of the *Kāmaloka*, and only (3) on an object belonging to the same *loka*’ (XVII b)

‘If the *Javana*, the being, and the object, all of them belong to the *Kāmaloka*, then alone *Tadālabhāna* is possible on an object which is ‘clear’ or very ‘distinct’ (XVIII)

(B)

§15 *Javana*

(*The consciousness of activity*)

‘In a course of cognition of the *Kāmaloka*, the *Javana*-thought-moment is repeated seven or six times. In the case of a fainting consciousness, at the time of death or swoon, it is repeated only five times. They say, when the Buddha performed the ‘twin miracle’ and the like, the quick process of his re-viewing mind was such as to require only four or five moments of *Javana*. When the *Yogāvacara* obtains *Appanā* for the first time, either of the *Mahaggata* or of the ‘super-intellection’, the *Javana* thought moment takes place only once, after which it sinks down into *Bhavana*’ (XIX a)

---

rammansambhavo nathi, tadā yam kiñci paricītapubbam parittārammanamārabbha upēkkhāsahagatasanturanam uppajjati. Tamanantartvā bhavangapāto va hoti vadanti ācariyā

(b) Tathā kāmāvacarajavanāvasāne kāmāvacarasattānam kāmāvacaradhammāsva ārammanabhūtesu tadārammanam icchanti

XVIII Kāme javanasattārammanānam niyame sati

Vibhūtetimāhante ca tadārammanamūritam

XIX (a) Javanesu ca parittajavanavithiyam kāmāvacarajavanāni sattakkhattum chakkhattumeva vā javanti. Mandappavattiyam pana maranakālādisu pañcavārameva Bhagavato pana yamakapāthāriyākālādisu lahukappavattiyam cattāri pañca vā paccavekkhanacittāni

'The consciousness of the four *Magga* takes place only for one thought-moment, after which, the *Phala* thought-moment is repeated two or three times, and then it sinks down into *Bhavanga*. While entering the *Nirodha-Samāpatti*, the *Javana* thought-moment of the fourth *Arūpa* is repeated two times, then the Yogi enters into *Nirodha*-state. When he rises from it, he gets a thought-moment either of *Anāgāmi-Phala* or of *Arahatta-Phala*, and then falls back into *Bhavanga*' (XIX b)

'On all occasions, in a state of *Jhāna*, the *Javana* consciousness flows on like the *Bhavanga*, for, there is no interruption of the *Citta-Vithu* in this case. Hence, here the *Javana* continues for numerous thought-moments'

(XIX c)

'The *Javana*-thought-moment repeats itself for seven times in the *Kāmaloka*. It occurs only once in *Magga* and Super-intellection. On other occasions, i.e., in *Jhāna*, it continues for many' (XX)

---

bhavantu pi vadantu Ādikammikassa pana paṭhamakappanāyaṃ mahaggaṭṭajavanāni abhiññājavanāni ca sabbathāpi ekavārameva javanti, tato param bhavangapāto va

XIX (b) Cattāro pana magguppādā ekacittakkhanikā. Tato param dve tūni phalacittāni yathārahaṃ uppajjanti. Tato param bhavangapāto Nirodhasamāpattikāle dvikkhattun catutthāruppajavanam javati. Tato param nirodham phusati. Vuṭṭhānakāle ca anāgāmi-phalam vā arahattaphalam vā yathārahamekavāram uppajjivā niruddhe bhavangapāto va hoti.

(c) Sabbathā pi samāpattivithiyam bhavaṅgasote viya vithuniyamo natthi katvā bahūni pi labbhanti ti.

XX Sattakkhattum parittāni maggābhiññā sakim matā, Avasesāni labbhanti javanāni bahūni pi.

(C)

§16. *Puggala-Bhedo**(Difference in beings)*

According to the difference in their mental gradation, the beings are classified into three groups, namely —

## I

a *The beings of lower species* Their consciousness is primarily instinctive, due to the fact that their actions were conditioned by *Lobha*, *Dosa* and *Moha* in their previous existence. Their consciousness is as weak as *Upekkhā-Sahagata Santīraṇa*, resultant of the previous *Akusala*. It is not possible for them to obtain *Jhāna*,

b *The idiot, dumb or born-blind* Their consciousness is as instinctive as that of the lower species, of a very feeble nature, due to the fact that their actions were conditioned by very weak *Kusala Hetu*s in their previous existence. It is as weak as *Upekkhā-Sahagata Santīraṇa*, being the resultant of very weak *Kusala Nānavṛppayutta Citta*.

They are called *Ahetuka*-beings, because their *Vipāka*-consciousness is devoid of any *Hetu*. They too are incapable of obtaining *Jhāna*.

## II

The beings who have got self-sacrificingness (*Alobha*) and good-will (*Adosa*) but not a good intelligence (*Amoha*), due to the fact that their actions were conditioned by strong *Alobha* and *Adosa* in their previous existence, but not by *Amoha*, are called *Dvīhetuka*-beings. They have no

*Amoha* in their *Vipāka Citta* They also, therefore, cannot obtain *Jhāna*

### III

The beings whose mind is sufficiently strong and rational, due to the fact that their actions were conditioned by strong *Alobha*, *Adosa* and *Amoha* in their previous existence, are called *Ti-Hetuka*-beings, because their *Vipāka*-consciousness is accompanied by all the three good *Hetus* They alone are worthy of *Jhāna* and even of the higher states of the Supramundane.

‘The *Dvīhetuka* and the *Ahetuka* beings cannot obtain either *Kiriyā* or *Appanā Javana* Even the beings born as men will not have the types of *Ñāna-Sampayutta Vipāka* consciousness [as they had no *Ñāna-Sampayutta Kusala Citta* in their previous life]

‘If born as beasts or in some other lower species, they will not have even the types of *Ñāna-Vip̐payutta Vipāka* consciousness [for, they are merely instinctive]’ (XXI)

The *Dvīhetuka* and the *Ahetuka* beings cannot obtain *Jhāna* or become Arhat, so they cannot have either *Kiriyā* or *Appanā Javana*

‘Among the *Ti-Hetuka* beings —

- (1) ‘The Arhat does not get *Kusala* or *Akusala Javana*
- (2) ‘The worldlings cannot have *Kiriyā-Javana*
- (3) The *Sekkhās* (= *Sotāpanna*, *Sakadāgāmi* and *Anā-*

---

XXI Dvīhetukānamahetukānaṃ ca panettha kiriyājavanāni ceva appanājavanāni ca na labbhanti Tathā ñānasampayuttavipākāni ca sugatīyam Duggatīyam pana ñānavippayuttāni ca mahāvīpākāni na labbhanti



*gāmī*) cannot have the types of *Ditthi-Gata Sampayutta* or *Vicikicchā-Sahagata* consciousness [as, they have destroyed the two fetters of *Sakkāya-Ditthi* and *Vicikicchā*]

(4) 'The *Anāgāmī* will not have the two types of enraged consciousness [as he has destroyed the fetter of *Paṭigha* or ill-will]

(5) 'The types of the Supramundane consciousness are obtained by those alone who have attained to this plane (XXII)

'The Arahant may get only forty-four types of consciousness

'The *Sekkhās* may get only fifty-six

'The *Puthujjanas* (=worldlings) may get only fifty-four' (XXIII)

(a) The Arahant does not get the following forty-five types of consciousness —

<i>Akusala</i>	12
<i>Kusala Kāmāvacara</i>	8
<i>Rūpa Kusala</i>	5
<i>Arūpa Kusala</i>	4
<i>Magga</i>	4
<i>Mahaggata-Vipaka</i>	9
The first three <i>Phala</i>	3
	<hr/>
	45

XXII Tīhetukesu ca khināsavānam kusalākusalajavanāni ca na labbhanti, tathā sekkha-puthujjanānam kīyājavanāni Dīttigata-sampayuttavīcīkicchājavanāni ca sekkhānam Anāgāmapuggalānam pana paṭighajavanāni ca na labbhanti Lokuttarajavanāni ca yathārahaṃ anyānameva samuppajanti ti

XXIII Asekkhānam catucattālīsa sekkhānamuddise,  
Chapaññāsāvesānam catupaññāsa sambhavā

Except these, he may get  $89-45=44$  types of consciousness

(b) The *Sekka*s do not get the following 33 types of consciousness —

<i>Kiriyā Javana</i> ( <i>Hasitupphāda</i> 1 + <i>Kāmāvacara</i>	
<i>Sahetuka</i> 8 + <i>Mahaggata</i> 9)	18
<i>Diṭṭhi-Sahagata Akusala</i>	4
<i>Vicikicchā-Sahagata Akusala</i>	1
<i>Arahatta-Phala</i>	1
<i>Mahaggāta-Vipāka</i>	9
	<hr/>
	33

Except these, they may get  $89-33=56$  types of consciousness

(c) The worldling do not get the following 35 types of consciousness —

<i>Kiriyā Javana</i>	18
<i>Lokuttara</i>	8
<i>Mahaggata-Vipāka</i>	9
	<hr/>
	35

Except these, they may get  $89-35=54$  types of consciousness

(D)

§ 17 *Bhūmi*

(*Life-planes*)

(1) 'In the *Kāmāvacara*-plane all the above types of consciousness may be obtained in the course of cognition

(2) 'In the *Rūpāvacara*-plane the two types of enraged consciousness and all the types that perform the function

of *Tadālabhāna* are not obtained

(3) 'In the *Arūpāvacara*-plane the first type of *Magga*, all the types of *Rūpa*, *Hasitupphāda* and an *Arūpa* of a lower stage are not obtained

(4) 'Those who are devoid of a certain sense cannot have the types of consciousness that arise through it

(5) 'The unconscious beings do not have any kind of conscious state' (XXIV)

#### CONCLUSION

'In the *Kāmāvacara*-plane eighty types of consciousness may arise in the course of cognition

'In the *Rūpāvacara*-plane sixty-four, and in the *Arūpāvacara* forty-two types of consciousness may be obtained' (XXV)

(1) Except the nine types of *Mahaggata-Vipāka*, all the remaining eighty types may be obtained in the course of cognition

(2) Except the (*Paṭigha* 2+*Mahāvipāka Tadālabhāna* 8+nose-tongue-and-touch-consciousness 6=) 16 types, all the remaining 80—16=64 types of consciousness are obtained in the *Rūpa-Loka*

(3) The following forty-two types of consciousness are obtained in the *Arūpāvacara*-plane —

*Akusala* (except the two types of

---

XXIV *Kāmāvacara*bhūmiyam panetāni sabbāni vitthiccittāni yathārahamupalabbhanti, rūpāvacara<sup>1</sup>bhūmiyam paṭighajavana-tadārammanavajjitāni Arūpāvacara<sup>2</sup>bhūmiyam pathamamaggarūpāvacara<sup>3</sup>-hasana-heṭṭhimārūppavajjitāni ca labbhanti Sabbatthāpi ca tam-tam-pasādarahitānam tam tam-dvārikavithiccittāni na labbhanteva Asaññasattānam pana sabbathā pi cittappavatti natthevā ti

XXV Asīti vitthiccittāni kāme rūpe yathāraham,  
Catusaṭṭhi tathā rūpe dve cattālisa labbhare

<i>Paṭigha</i> )	10
<i>Manodvārāvajjana</i>	1
<i>Kusala Kāmāvacara</i>	16
<i>Arūpāvacara</i>	8
<i>Lokuttara</i> , except Arhat- <i>Phala</i>	7
	—
	42

‘Thus, successively sinking into the *Bhavanga*, the waves of consciousness, arising through the six doors, flow on for the whole of life’ (XXVI)

---

XXVI Iccevam chadvārikacittappavattī yathāsambhavaṃ bhava-  
ngantantā yāvatāyukamabbocchinnaṃ pavattatīti

## CHAPTER V

### VITHI-MUTTA

*(Consciousness that does not come in  
the course of cognition)*

#### § 1 *Introductory*

‘The previous chapter, dealing with *Citta-Vithu* (the course of cognition), has explained how the consciousness functions in getting experiences of the world

‘Now we are going to discuss how it functions in connecting one life with the other’ (I)

‘To know how the consciousness functions that does not come in the course of cognition, we must understand the following four sets of four —

- (i) ‘The four planes of life
- (ii) ‘The four ways of consciousness in connecting  
one life with the other
- (iii) ‘The four kinds of Kamma
- (iv) ‘The four causes of death’ (II)

#### I

#### §2 *Planes of life*

‘There are four planes of life, namely, (a) the plane of misery, (b) the better plane of the world of desires,

---

I Vithicittavasenevā pavattiyamudirito,

Pavattisangaho nāma sandhiyan dāni vuccati

II Catasso bhūmiyo, catubbidhā paṭisandhi, cattāri kammāni, catudhā maranuppatti ceti vithi-muttasangahe cattāri catukkāni vedītabbāni

(c) the plane of the form, and (d) the plane of the formless (III)

(a)

‘There are four kinds of the plane of misery, namely, (1) hell, (2) animal kingdom, (3) the world of the ghosts, and (4) the host of the demons’ (IV)

(b)

‘There are seven kinds of the better plane of the world of desires, namely, (1) men, (2) the *Cātummahārājika* gods, (3) the *Tāvātinsa* gods, (4) the *Yāmā* gods, (5) the *Tusita* gods, (6) the *Nimmānarati* gods, and (7) the *Paranimmita-vasa-vatti* gods’ (V a)

‘The above eleven kinds of life-planes are called *Kāmāvacara-Bhūmi* or the plane of beings whose consciousness is restless under the influence of diverse worldly desires’ (V b)

(c)

‘The plane of the form (*Rūpāvacara*) is of sixteen grades, comprising —

(1) ‘The planes of the first stage of *Jhāna*, namely, (1) *Brahmaṇsajja*, (2) *Brahmapurohita* and (3) *Mahābrahmā*

(11) ‘The planes of the second stage of *Jhāna*, namely, (4) *Parittābhā*, (5) *Appamānābhā* and (6) *Ābhassara*

III Tattha apāyabhūmi, kāmasugatibhūmi, rūpāvacarabhūmi, arūpāvacarabhūmi ceti catasso bhūmiyo nāma

IV Tāsu, nīlayo, tiracchānayoni, pettivisayo, asurakāyo cūti apāyabhūmi catubbidhā hoti

V (a) Manussā, cātummahārājikā, tāvaṇṇasā, yāmā, tusitā, nimmānarati, paranimmita-vasavatti cūti kāmasugatibhūmi sattaviḍhā hoti

(b) Sā paṇāyam ekādasaviḍhā pi kāmāvacarabhūmicceva saṅkham gacchati

(iii) 'The planes of the third stage of *Jhāna*, namely, (7) *Paritta Subhā*, (8) *Appamāna Subhā* and (9) *Subhakīṇha*

(iv) 'The planes of the fourth stage of *Jhāna*, namely, (10) *Vehapphala*, (11) *Asañña-Satta* or the unconscious beings, and *Suddhāvāsa* which is again of five grades, (12) *Avihā*, (13) *Atappā*, (14) *Sudassā*, (15) *Sudassī* and (16) *Akanitthā*' (VI)

(d)

The plane of the formless (*Arūpāvacara*) is of four grades, comprising —

- (1) 'The sphere of the conception of infinite space
- (2) 'The sphere of the conception of infinite consciousness
- (3) 'The sphere of the conception of nothingness
- (4) 'The sphere of the subtlest consciousness' (VII)

### §3 Who are born in what planes ?

'In the *Suddhāvāsa*-plane [the *Anāgāmī* alone are born] not the worldlings, the *Sotāpanna* or the *Sakadāgāmī*

'Those who have attained to the Supramundane state are never born in the realm of the unconscious beings or in the plane of misery

---

VI *Brahmapārisajjā*, *Brahmapurohitā*, *Mahābrahmā ceti pathama-jhānabhūmi* *Parittābhā*, *Appamānābhā*, *Ābassarā ceti dutiyajjhānabhūmi* *Parittasubhā*, *Appamānasubhā*, *Subhakīṇhā ceti tatiyajjhānabhūmi* *Vehapphalā*, *Asaññasattā*, *Suddhāvāsā ceti catutthajjhānabhūmi* *ti rūpāvacarabhūmi* *solasa vidhā hoti* *Avihā* *Atappā* *Sudassā* *Suddasī* *Akanitthā ceti* *sudhāvāsa-bhūmi* *pañcavi dhā hoti*

VII *Ākāśānañcāyatanabhūmi*, *Vīññānañcāyatanabhūmi*, *Ākūcāyatanabhūmi*, *Nevasaññānāsaññāyatanabhūmi* *ceti arūpabhūmi* *catubbidhā hoti*

‘All are born in the other realms’ (VIII)

## II

§4 *The ways of consciousness in connecting one life with the other (Paṭisandhi)*

‘Consciousness connects one life with the other in four ways, namely —

- (a) connecting to a life in the plane of misery,
- (b) connecting to a life in the better plane of the world of desires,
- (c) connecting to a life in the plane of the form, and
- (d) connecting to a life in the plane of the formless’

(IX)

(a)

‘The only type of consciousness that performs the function of connecting this life, at the time of death, to a life in the plane of misery is *Ahetuka akusala-vipākā upekkhā-sahagata santīrana*

‘It manifests as the first moment of consciousness (= *Paṭisandhi*) in the beginning of a life in the plane of misery, functions as the *Bhavanga* for the whole of that life, and as *Cuti-citta* at the time of death, and then dies out’ (X)

VIII Puthujjanā na labbhanti suddhāvāsesu sabbathā,  
Sotāpannā ca sakadāgāmino cāpi puggalā  
Ariyā nopalabbhanti asaṇṇāpāyabhūmisu,  
Sesatthānesu labbhanti ariyānanyā pi ca

IX Apāyapaṭisandhi, kāmasugatapaṭisandhi, rūpāvacarapaṭisandhi, arūpāvacarapaṭisandhi ceti catubbidhā paṭisandhi nāma

X Tattha akusalavipākopekkhāsahagatasantīranam apāyabhūmiyam okkantikkhane paṭisandhi hutvā, tato param bhavangam, pariyoṣāne cavanam hutvā vocchijjati Ayamekāpāyapaṭisandhi nāma



(b)

'The type of *Ahetuka kusala-vipāka uppekkhā-sahagata Santīrana* consciousness connects this life, at the time of death, to the life of a born-blind (dumb, or idiot) or to that of a demon living on earth

'It manifests as the first moment of consciousness (*Patisandhū*) in the beginning of the next life, functions as the *Bhavanga* for the whole of that life, and as *Cuti-citta* at the time of death

'The eight types of *Mahā-Vipāka* consciousness function as *Patisandhū*, *Bhavanga* and *Cuti* only in a being of the better plane of the world of desires

'These nine types of consciousness are called *Kāma-Sugata Patisandhū* or those that connect this life to the next in the better plane of the world of desires' (XI a)

'The above ten types of consciousness are called *Kāmāvacara-Patisandhū Citta*' (XI b)

'There is no fixed limit to the duration of life of the beings born in the four planes of misery, in human beings, and in the degraded *Asuras*. The life-term, in the case of the gods called the *Cātummahārājika*, is 500 celestial years, which is 9,000,000 years according to our calculation. The life-term of the *Tāvātimsa* gods is four-times

XI (a) *Kusalavipāko pekkhāsahagatasantīranā uppekkhā kāmā-sugatīyam manussānam ceva jaccandhādīnam, bhummānissitānam ca vipātukāsūranā patisandhū bhavānga-uttarasena pavattanti. Mahāvipākāni pana attha sabbatthā pi kāmā-sugatīyam patisandhū bhavānga-cutivasena pavattanti. Imā nava kāmā-sugatī patisandhiyo nāma.*

(b) *Sā panāyam dasaviḍhā pi kāmāvacara patisandhi ceva saṅkham gacchati.*

this amount That of the *Yāmā* gods is again four times the life-term of the *Tāvātinsa*, and so on for the *Fusūta*, *Nimmāna-Ratī*, and the *Paranimmitavasavatti* gods' (XII)

'The life duration of a *Vasavatti* god is 9216,000,000 human years' (XIII)

'The resultant consciousness of the first stage of *Jhāna* takes effect on the plane of the first stage of *Jhāna*, [i.e., *Brahmaloka*] by way of *Patisandhi*, *Bhavanga* and *Cuti*. The resultant consciousness of the second and the third stages of *Jhāna* takes effect on the plane of the second stage of *Jhāna*. The resultant consciousness of the fourth stage of *Jhāna* takes effect on the plane of the third stage of *Jhāna*. \* And the resultant consciousness of the fifth stage of *Jhāna* takes effect on the plane of the fourth stage of *Jhāna* \*'

'But, for the beings attaining to the unconscious realm, the *Patisandhi* is only of the material form. Similarly, thereafter, during life and at the time of re-deceasing, it is only material form which having lived ceases to be.'

---

XII Tesu catunnam apāyānam, manussānam, vinipātikāsūranam ca āyupamānaganāyā nuyamo natthi Cātummahārījikānam pana devānam dibbhāni pañcavassasatāni āyupamānam Manussaganāyā navutivassasatasahassappamānam hoti Tato cattuggunam tāvatumsānam Tato catuggunam yāmānam Tato catuggunam tusitānam Tato catuggunam nimmānaratnam Tato catuggunam paranimmitavasavattinam

XIII Navasatam cekavisa vassānam koṭṭyo tathā,

Vassasatasahassāni satthi ca vasavattisu

\*The planes of the different gods are arranged according to Suttanta which maintains the possibility of only four stages of *Jhāna*, the second and the third stages being identified as one.

‘These are the six ways of *Paṇsandhi* in the *Rūpaloka*’  
(XIV)

‘Among these, the life-term of the *Brahmapārisajja* gods is one third of an aeon (*Kappa*), of the *Brahmapurohita* gods half aeon, of the *Mahābrahma* gods one aeon, of the *Paritābha* gods two aeons, of the *Appamānābhā* gods four aeons, of the *Ābhassara* gods eight aeons, of the *Parittasubha* gods sixteen aeons, of the *Appamānasubha* gods thirty-two aeons, of the *Subhakinha* gods sixty-four aeons, of the *Vehapphala* gods and the unconscious beings one hundred aeons, of the *Aviha* gods one thousand aeons, of the *Ātappa* gods two thousands aeons, of the *Sudassa* gods four thousand aeons, of the *Sudassī* gods eight thousand aeons, and of the *Akanittha* gods sixteen thousand aeons’ (XV)

(c)

‘Resultant consciousness of the first stage of *Arūpa-loka* *Jhāna* and of the following stages take effect on the plane

XIV Paṭhamajjhānavipākam paṭhamajjhāna bhūmiyam paṇsandhi-bhavaṅga-cūṭivasena pavattati, tathā dutiyajjhāna vipākam tatiyajjhānavipākāṇa dutiyajjhānabhūmiyam, catutthajjhānavipākam tatiyajjhānabhūmiyam, pañcamajjhānavipākam catutthajjhāna-bhūmiyam Asaññasattānam pana rūpameva paṇsandhi hoti, tathā tato param pavattiyam cavanakāle ca rūpameva pavattitvā nirujjhati. Imā cha rūpāvacarapaṇsandhiyo nāma

XV Tesu brahmapārisajjanam devānam kappassa tatiyo bhāgo āyupparamānam, brahmapurohitānam upaddhakappo, mahābrahmānam eko kappo, paritābhānam dve kappāni, appamānābhānam cattāri kappāni, ābhassarānam attha kappāni, parittasubhānam solasa kappāni appamānasubhānam dvattimsakappāni, subhakinānam catusatthi kappāni, vehapphalānam asaññasattānaṇa pañca kappasatāni, avihānam kappasahassāni, ātappānam dve kappasahassāni, sudassānam cattāri kappasahassāni, sudassīnam attha kappasahassāni, akanitthānam solasa kappasahassāni

of the four grades of the *Arūpa loka* plane respectively, by way of *Paṭisandhi*, *Bhavanga* and *Cuti*. These are the four ways of *Paṭisandhi* in the *Arūpa-loka*' (XVI)

'Among these four, the life-term of the gods who have attained to the sphere of *infinite space* is twenty thousand aeons, that of the gods who have attained to the sphere of infinite consciousness is forty thousand aeons, that of the gods who have attained to the sphere of nothingness is sixty thousand aeons, and that of the gods who have attained to the sphere of the subtlest consciousness is eighty-four thousand aeons' (XVII)

'In one life, the *Paṭisandhi*, *Bhavanga* and *Cuti* are of the same type, having the same object' (XVIII)

### III

#### §5 *The four kinds of Karma*

(4) 'There are four kinds of Karma according to the functions they perform, namely —

- (1) 'Karma which conditions birth after death
- (2) 'Karma which sustains the life of a being
- (3) 'Karma which creates troubles in the life of a being

---

XVI Paṭhamāruppādīvīpākāni paṭhamāruppādībhūmisu yathā-kkamam paṭisandhi-bhavaṅga-cutivasena pavattanti Imā catasso āruppapaṭisandhiyo nāma

XVII Tesu pana ākāśānañcāyatanūpagānam devānaṃ viśatī kappasahassāni āyuppanānam, viññānañcāyatanūpagānam devānaṃ cattālisa kappasahassāni, ākiñcaññāyatanūpagānam devānaṃ satthi kappasahassāni, nevasaññānāsaññāyatanūpagānam devānaṃ caturā-sitī kappasahassāni

XVIII Paṭisandhi bhavangaṃ ca tathā cavanamānasam Ekameva tattheveka-vīsayam cekajātiyaṃ

(4) 'Karma which is destructive to the life of a being

(B) 'There are four kinds of Karma according to the strength of their effect, namely —

(1) 'Karma which is very serious

(2) 'Karma which is done just before death

(3) 'Karma which is repeatedly done

(4) 'Karma which is of a light kind

(C) 'There are four kinds of Karma according to the time they take in giving their effect, namely —

(1) 'Karma which gives its effect in this very life

(2) 'Karma which gives its effect in the next life

(3) 'Karma which gives its effect in some life after this

(4) 'Karma which is ineffective

(D) 'There are four kinds of Karma according to the place where they produce their effect, namely —

(1) 'Immoral Karma which produces its effect in the plane of misery

(2) 'Moral Karma which produces its effect in the better plane of the world of desires

(3) 'Moral Karma which produces its effect in the plane of the form

(4) 'Moral Karma which produces its effect in the plane of the formless' (XIX)

---

XIX Janakamupatthambhakamupapilakamupaghātakam ceti kiccavasena, garukamāsannamācinnam kaṭattākammam ceti pākadānapariyāyena, dīṭṭhadhammavedaniyam upapajjavedaniyam aparāpariyavedaniyam ahoṣikammam ceti pākakālavasena cattāri kammāni nāma

## §6 The types of karma

## Immoral

‘There are three kinds of immoral Karma according to their ‘door’ of action, namely, (i) Karma of the body, (ii) Karma of the speech, and (iii) Karma of the mind ’

(XX)

‘How ? Taking life, taking what is not given (= stealing), and unchastity are bodily Karma, because they are generally performed by the body’ (XXI)

‘Lying, slandering, abusive language and idle talk are Karma of speech, because they are commonly done through speaking ’ (XXII)

‘Covetousness, ill-will and false view are the Karma of mind, because they belong primarily to our thought, though they often get expression through body and speech as well ’ (XXIII)

‘Among these, taking life, abusive language and ill-will are possible in one whose consciousness is rooted in *Dosa* (hate) Unchastity, covetousness and false view are possible in one whose consciousness is rooted in *Lobha* (greed) The remaining four [viz, taking what is not

Tathā akusalam, kāmāvacarakusalam, rūpāvacarakusalam, arūpāvacarakusalam ceti pākatthānavasena

XX Tattha akusalam kāyakammam, vacikammam, manokammam ceti kammadvārasena tividham hoti

XXI Katham ? Pānātipāto, adinnādānam, kāmesu micchācāro ceti kāyaviññattisankhāte kāyadvāre bāhullavuttito kāyakammam nāma

XXII Musāvādo, pisunavācā, pharusavācā, samphappalāpo ceti vacivīññattisankhāte vacīdvāre bāhullavuttito vacikammam nāma

XXIII Abhiyjhā, byāpādo, micchādīṭṭhi ceti aññātarāpi viññattiyā manasmim yeva bāhullavuttito manokammam nāma

given, lying, slandering, and idle talk] are due to both of them According to the states of consciousness all the immoralities are of twelve types' (XXIV)

*Moral*

'There are three kinds of moral *Kāmāvacara* Karma also according to their 'doors' of action, namely, (1) Karma of the body, (2) Karma of the speech and (3) Karma of the mind

'It is also threefold with respect to 'charity' (*Dāna*), 'virtue' (*Sīla*) and 'meditation' (*Bhāvanā*) It is eight-fold with respect to the types of consciousness Or, again, it is ten-fold, taking into account 'charity', 'virtue', 'practice of meditation', 'reverence,' 'service,' 'transference of merit' (= *Patti-Dāna*), receiving thankfully the merits offered by others, listening to the Doctrine, teaching the Doctrine, and forming correct views

'These twenty types of consciousness (immoral 12+ moral 8) are counted as Karma in the *Kāma-Loka*' (XXV)

*Moral Rūpāvacara Karma*

'Moral *Rūpāvacara* is Karma only of the mind It

XXIV Tesu pānātipāto, pharusavācā, byāpādo ca dosamūlena jāyanti Kāmesu micchācāro, abhijjhā, micchādītthi ca lobhamūlena Sesāni cattāri pi dvīhi mūlehi sambhavanti Cittuppadavasena panetam akusalam sabbthā pi dvādasavidham hoti

XXV Kāmāvacarakusalampi kāyadvāre pavattam kāyakammam, vacīdvāre pavattam vacīkammam, manodvāre pavattam manokammam ceti, kammadvāravasena tividham hoti Tathā dāna-sīla-bhāvanāvasena Cittuppadavasena panetam atthavidham hoti Dāna-sīla-bhāvanā-apacāyana-veyyāvacca-pattidāna-pattānumodana - dhammasasavana-dhammaḍḍesana-ditthijjukammavasena dasavidham hoti Tam panetam visatvīdhampi kāmāvacarakammamīceva sankham gacchati

belongs to meditation According to the difference in constituents there are five *Jhāna*-stages of it ' (XXVI a)

*Moral Arūpāvacara Karma*

'Moral *Arūpāvacara* is also Karma only of the mind It also belongs to meditation According to difference in objects there are four *Jhānas* of it ' (XXVI b)

§7 *The types of their resultant*

*Immoral*

'Except distraction (*Uddhacca*), all the remaining types of immoral Karma cause one to be born in the plane of misfortune (*Apāya*)

'But all the twelve types of immoral Karma yield the seven *Ahetuka* resultant that arise any where in *Kāmaloka* and *Rūpaloka* in the process of cognition, as the circumstances permit ' (XXVII)

*Uddhacca* is not strong enough to give *Paṭisandhu* in the *Apāya* It is to be overcome only by the Path of Arahathood

*Moral Kāmāvacara*

'Moral Karma of the *Kāmaloka* causes one to be born in the better plane of the world of desires. The eight types of *Mahā-Vipāka* consciousness arise in the course of

XXVI (a) Rūpāvacarakusalam pana manokammameva, tañca bhāvanāmayam, appanāpattam, jhānangabhedenā pañcavi-dham hoti

(b) Tathā arūpāvacarakusalam ca manokammaṃ Tampi bhāvanāmayam, appanāpattam, ārammanabhedenā catubbidham hoti

XXVII Etthākusalakammamuddhaccarahitam apāyabhūmiyaṃ paṭisandhim janeti Pavattiyam pana sabbampi davādasavidham sattākusalapākaṃ sabbathā pi kāmaloke rūpaloke ca yathārahaṃ vipaccati



cognition [performing the function of *Tadālabana*] in the *Kāmaloka*

‘The eight types of *Ahetuka* resultant consciousness may arise anywhere in the *Kāmaloka* and the *Rūpaloka* [in the course of cognition], as the circumstances permit ’

(XXVIII)

‘A stronger kind of moral Karma, rooted in all the three *Kusala Hetus* [i e , the four types of *Ñānasampayutta*], causes one to be born as a moral and highly intelligent being, either as a man or as some god of the *Kāmaloka*. The sixteen types of its resultant arise in the course of cognition [viz , *Ahetuka* 8+*Sahetuka* ‘functioning as *Tadālabana*’ 8=16]

‘A weaker kind of moral Karma rooted in all the three *Kusala Hetus* [i e , the four types of *Ñānasampayutta*] and a stronger kind of it rooted in only *Alobha* and *Adosa* [i e , the four types of *Ñānavipphayutta*] cause one to be born as a man of feeble intelligence. Their resultant arises in the course of cognition only as twelve types, i e , with the exception of the four types of *Ñānasampayutta*.

‘A weaker kind of moral Karma, rooted in only *Alobha* and *Adosa* [but not in *Amoha*, i e , the four types of *Ñānavipphayutta*], causes one to be born as a man, either born-blind, dumb or idiot. Its resultant arises in the

---

XXVIII Kāmāvacarakusalampi kāmasugatiyameva patisandhim janeti Tathā pavattiyam ca mahāvīpākāni Ahetukavīpākāni pana attha pi sabbatthāpi kāmaloke rūpaloke ca yathāraham vipaccati

course of cognition only as the eight types of *Ahetuka Vipāka*’ (XXIX)

‘Some hold that neither the *Asankhāraka* types of consciousness can yield *Sasankhāraka* resultant, nor the *Sasankhāraka* types *Asankhāraka* one

‘According to them, a stronger kind of the two types of moral *Asankhāraka Nānasampayutta* consciousness will yield twelve resultants, namely, four *Asankhāraka* and eight *Ahetuka*. Similarly, a stronger kind of the two types of moral *Sasankhāraka Nānasampayutta* consciousness will also yield twelve resultants, namely, four *Sasankhāraka* and eight *Ahetuka*

‘A weaker kind of the two types of *Nānasampayutta*, and a stronger kind of the two types of *Nānaviṇṇayutta Asankhāraka* consciousness yield ten resultants, namely, two *Nānaviṇṇayutta Asankhāraka* and eight *Ahetuka*. Similar is the case with the two types of *Sasankhāraka* consciousness

‘A weaker kind of the types of *Nānaviṇṇayutta* consciousness yield only the eight *Ahetuka* resultants’ (XXX)

‘One who has practised the first and the second stages of *Jhāna* of the *Rūpāvacara* moral type, in a minor degree, is born as a *Brahmapārisajja* god, one who has practised

XXIX Tatthāpi tihetukamukkattham kusalam tihetukam paṭisandhim datvā pavatte solasa vipākāni vipaccati. Tihetukamomakam dvihetukamukkattham ca kusalam dvihetukam paṭisandhim datvā pavatte tihetukavāhitāni dvādasā vipākāni vipaccati. Dvihetukamomakam pana kusalam ahetukameva paṭisandhim deti. Pavatte ca ahetukavipākāneva vipaccati.

XXX Asankhāram sasankhāra-vipākāni na paccati,  
Sasankhāramasankhāravipākāni ti kecana  
Tesam dvādasā pākāni dasaṭṭha ca yathākkamam,  
Yathāvuttānūsārena yathāsambhavamuddise

them in a moderately high degree, as a *Brahmapurohita* god, and one who has practised them in a very high degree, as a *Mahā Brahmā* god

‘Similarly, one who has practised the third stage of *Jhāna* of the *Rūpāvacara* moral type, in a minor degree, is born as a *Parittābhā* god, one who has practised it in a moderately high degree, as an *Appamānābhā* god, and one who has practised it in a very high degree, as an *Ābhassara* god

‘One who has practised the fourth stage of *Jhāna*, in a minor degree, is born as a *Parittasubha* god, one who has practised it in a moderately high degree, as an *Appamānasubha* god, and one who has practised it in a very high degree, as a *Subhakinha* god

‘One who has practised the fifth stage of *Jhāna* [of the *Rūpa*] is born as a *Vehapphala* god. One who has practised the same with a view to get rid of consciousness, is born as an unconscious being

‘*Anāgāmī* (=never returners) are born as *Suddhāvāsa* gods’ (XXXI)

#### *Arūpāvacara*

‘One who has practised a *Jhāna* of the moral *Arūpā-*

---

XXXI Rūpāvacarakusalam pana pathamajjhānam parittam bhāvetvā brahmapārisajjesu uppajjati. Tadeva majjhimaṃ bhāvetvā brahmapurohitesu, paṇitaṃ bhāvetvā mahābrahmesu. Tathā dutiyajjhānam-tatīyajjhānaṃ parittam bhāvetvā parittābhesu, majjhimaṃ bhāvetvā appamānābhesu, paṇitaṃ bhāvetvā ābhassaresu. Catutthajjhānam paṇitaṃ bhāvetvā parittasubhesu, majjhimaṃ bhāvetvā appamānasubhesu, paṇitaṃ bhāvetvā subhakinhesu. Pañcamajjhānam bhāvetvā vehapphalesu, tadeva saññāvirāgaṃ bhāvetvā asaññasatesu. Anāgāmino pana suddhāvāsesu uppajjanti.

*vacara* is born as a god of the corresponding sphere of the *Arūpaloka* ' (XXXII)

'Thus, the types of the resultant of the *Mahaggata*-Karma function as *Paṭisandhi*, and in the course of life in their respective realms ' (XXXIII)

(IV)

§8 *The causes of death*

'There are four causes of death, namely, (a) expiration of the span of life, (b) extinction of Karma, (c) both of them and (d) destructive Karma ' (XXXIV)

'At the time of death, due to the strength of his Karma, either of the following appear before him at any of the six doors—

- (1) the Karma,
- (2) an article that had been generally associated with the performance of that Karma, or
- (3) the sign of destiny that awaits him in this next life

'After that, upon that very object presented before him, his thoughts, either pure or evil, are directed very much, in accordance to the realm in which he is going to be born, due to the result of his Karma. Or, he feels

XXXII *Arūpāvacarakusalam ca yathākkamam bhāvetvā arūpesu uppajjanti*

XXXIII *Itthan mahaggatam puññam yathābhūmi-vatthitām, Janeti sādāsam pākam paṭisandhippavattiyam*

XXXIV *Āyukkhaṇa, kammakkhaṇa, ubhayakkhaṇa, upacchedakammunā ceti catudhā maranuppatti nāma*

as if he is doing that very action, that goes to condition his next birth' (XXXV)

'To one who is at the point of death, at the end of his *Vithu-Citta* [on the object presented before him], or at the expiry of his *Bhavanga*, the *Cuti Citta* arises and sinks down, which is the last phase of his present life. Just after that, the *Patibandha*-consciousness rises up in the next life, impelled by the latent force of ignorance, arising as a result of Karma rooted in desire, associated with all its concomitants, and being the centre of all the states arising with it, joining this life with the other, according to circumstances, upon the same object as presented before him, being the first moment of consciousness in that life. It may rise up there either on a physical base or even without it [i.e., in the *Arūpa Loka*] (XXXVI)

---

XXXV Tathā ca marantānam pana maranakāle yathāraham abhinukhibhūtam bhavantare patisandhjanakam kammam vā, tam-kammakaranakāle rūpādīkamupaladdhapubbamupakaranabhūtam ca kammanimittam vā, anantaramuppajjamānabhāve upalabbhitabbam upabhogabhūtam ca gatinimittam vā kammabalena chananam dvārānam āññatarasmim paccupatthāti. Tato param tameva tathopatthitām ārammanam ārabhha vipaccamānakammānurūpam parisuddhamupakīḷittham vā upalabbhitabbabhavānurūpam tattho-natam vā cittasantānam abhinham pavattati bāhullena. Tameva vā pana janakabhūtam kammamabhinavakaranavasena dvārapavat-tam hoti.

XXXVI Paccāsanamaranassa tassa vitthittavasāne bhavanga-kkhave vā cavanavasena paccuppannabhavapariyosānabhūtam cutcit-tam uppajjtvā nirujjhati. Tasmim niruddhavasāne tassānantaram eva tathāgahitamārammanamārabhha savatthukam avatthukameva vā yathāraham avijjānusayaparikkhittena tanhānusayamūlakena sankhārena janiyamānam sampayuttheḥ parigayhamānam saha-jātānamadhitthānabhāvena pubbangamabhūtam bhavantarapatisandhānavasena patisandhisankhātām mānasam uppajjamānameva patitthāti bhavantare.

§9 *Patisandhū*

'There are only five faint thought moments of *Javana* in the course of cognition just at the time of death. Therefore, if the objects are actually present before him at the time of death, the *Patisandhū* and the following *Bhavanga* consciousness have also the same objects. Thus, the articles generally associated with the action, and the sign of the destiny that awaits him, which are presented before him at any of the six doors, may be either present or past, in the case of a *Kāmāvacara-Patisandhū*. But the *Kāma* is always one which has been done in the past, revived at the mind-door.

'Whatever the objects may be, they all belong to the *Kāmaloka*' (XXXVII)

'The object of a *Rūpāvacara Patisandhū* consciousness is an ideational one, the after-image of the *Kammatthāna*. Similarly, the object of an *Arūpa-Patisandhū* may be infinity or concepts. The life of an unconscious being begins only with a group of nine material qualities, called *Jīvitānavaḥa*. There is, therefore, only a material birth. The birth of the *Arūpāvacara* gods is only mental, and that of the other beings both material and mental (XXXVIII)

---

XXXVII Maranāsannavithiyam pīnettha mandapavattāni pañceva javanāni pāṭikankhitaḥḥāni Tasā yadā paccuppannārammanesu āpāthamāgatesu dharantesveva maranam hoti, tadā paṭisandhū-bhavangānampi paccuppannārammanatā labbhatu katvā kāmāvacarapaṭisandhiyā chadvāragahitam kammanimittam, gatinimittāṇca paccuppannamattitārammanam upalabbhati, kammanam pana atutameva Tam ca manodvāragahitam Itāni pana sabbāni pi paritadhammabhūtānāvārammanāni

XXXVIII Rūpāvacarapaṭisandhiyā pana paññatubhūtaṃ kammanimittamevārammanam hoti Tathā āruppapaṭisandhiyā ca

‘After death, a being of the *Arūpaloka* is born either in the same or in a higher sphere, but never in a lower one. He may also be born in the *Kāmaloka* as a moral and intelligent being, either a man or a god [1 e, *Tihetuka* beings]

‘A being of the *Rūpaloka* is never born, after his death, either as an idiot, born-blind or born-deaf man, or as a being of the plane of misery [1 e, *Ahetuka* being]

‘A moral and intelligent being [1 e, *Tihetuka* being] of the *Kāma-Loka* may take his birth in any kind of realm or sphere according to his Karma

‘The other beings of the *Kāma-Loka* [1 e, the *Duhetuka* and the *Ahetuka* beings] are born in a realm of the *Kāma-loka* itself’ (XXXIX)

#### §10 The stream of personality

‘Thus, this life being connected with the other, and the *Patisandhi*-consciousness having sunk down, the stream of personality flows on, on that very object, like the current of a river, continuously, being interrupted at intervals only by the courses of cognition, till his death. This flow is called *Bhavanga*, as it forms a part of the being’s existence. It is arrested only when he gets a course of cognition in his consciousness.

mahaggatabhūtam paññattubbhūtam ca kammanimittameva yathā-  
raham ārammanam hoti Asaññasattānam jīvitānavakameva paṭi-  
sandhibhāvena patitthāti Tasmā te rūpapatīsandhikā nāma Arūpā  
arūpapatīsandhikā Sesā rūpārūpapatīsandhikā

XXXIX Aruppacutiyaṃ honti hetthimārūppavajjūtā,  
Paramārūppasandhi ca tathā kāmāhetukā  
Rūpāvacaracutiyaṃ aheturahitā siyuma,  
Sabbā kāmāhetumhā, kamesseva panetarā

‘At the end, when he is at the point of death, it functions as the *Cuti-citta* and then ceases

‘Thus, the cycle of *Paṭisandhū*, *Bhavanga* and so on turns round and round like the wheel of a chariot’ (XL)

‘The stream of consciousness flows on from life to life in the circle of *Paṭisandhū*, *Bhavanga*, *Vithū* and *Cuti*

‘The wise, meditating on its impermanent nature, and realising the Summum Bonum, free themselves completely from the bondage of attachment, and thus finally stop their flow of life’ (XLI)

---

XL Iccevaṃ gahitapaṭisandhikānaṃ paṇi paṭisandhinirodhānantaratoppabbhūti tamevārammaṇamārabbhā tadeva cittaṃ yāva cuticittuppadā asati vithicittuppadē bhavaṃsaṃ angabhāvaṃ na bhavāngasantatisankhātā mānasā abbochinnaṃ nādisoto viya pavattati Pariyosāne ca cavanavasena cuticittāṃ hutvā nirujjhāti Tato param ca paṭisandhādayo rathacakkamiva yathākkamaṃ evameva parivattantā pavattanti

XLI Paṭisandhū-bhavāṅgavithūyo cuti ccha tathā bhavāntare, Puna sandhū bhavāṅgamūcayam parivattati cittaśantati Paṭisankhāya paṇetamaddhuvam adhigantvā padamniccutam budhā, Susamucchinnaśinehabandhanā samameśanti cirāya subbatā



## CHAPTER VI RŪPA

(*Material qualities*)

### SECTION I SAMUDESĀ

(*Kinds of material properties*)

#### §1 *Introductory*

‘Thus far, we have discussed about the types, divisions and functions of consciousness, and the psychic factors’  
(I)

‘Now we are going to deal with the nature of matter under the following five heads —

- (1) ‘Their properties
- (2) ‘Their classifications
- (3) ‘Their generation
- (4) ‘Their groups
- (5) ‘Their modes of function’ (II)

#### §2 *What is Rūpa ?*

A piece of stone is white, hard, round and heavy. These are the different qualities of it. But can we find a stone which is neither white, nor hard, nor round, nor heavy, nor of any kind ? Can it exist apart from the qualities ?

- 
- I Ettāvatā vibhattā hī sappabhedappavattikā,  
Cittacetasikā dhammā rūpam dāni pavuccāti  
II Samuddesā vibhāgā ca samuṭṭhānā kalāpato,  
Pavattukkamato ceti pañcadhā tattha sangaho

We will feel that it is not even possible to conceive of it, for, we cannot think of a material existence without understanding it in the terms of qualities. If all the qualities were to be eliminated from a body it would cease to exist. The material bodies are nothing but different permutation and combination of qualities that are in a state of flux. They are, therefore, called *Rūpa* or 'that which is changeful'. The word '*Rūpa*' denotes all material qualities in its general sense, but in its specific sense it means only the *visible forms*.

What is hard is earth. Here 'hardness' is not something separate from 'earth', but it is the very essence of it. There can be no earth which is not hard. Similarly, what flows is water, what burns is fire, what moves is air. These are called the four *Mahābhūta* or 'the primary qualities'.

All the other material qualities are conditioned by these four, therefore, they are called *Upādāya Rūpa* or 'the conditioned qualities'.

'All the material qualities may be brought under two classes, namely,

(1) The four *Mahā-Bhūta* or the primary qualities, and (2) the other qualities conditioned by them. Both of them comprise the following eleven types' (III)

### §3 *Eleven types of the material qualities*

(A) '*Mahā-Bhūta* (the primary qualities)

---

III Cattāri mahābhūtāni catunnam ca mahābhūtānam upādāya rūpam ti duvidhampetam rūpam ekādasavidhena sangaham gacchati

- (i) 'Essential material qualities —  
earth, water, fire and air [4]

(B) '*Upādāya Rūpa* (the conditioned qualities)

- (ii) 'Sensitive material qualities —  
eye, ear, nose, tongue and touch [5]

- (iii) 'Sensible material qualities —  
form, sound, smell, taste, (and touch) [4]

'The material quality of 'touch' is the same as the above three essential qualities, namely, earth (=hardness), fire (=hot or cold) and air (=pressure) It has not, therefore, been counted as an independent quality

- (iv) 'Material qualities of sex —  
female and male [2]

- (v) 'The seat of consciousness —  
heart .. [1]

- (vi) 'The life-principle in matter —  
vital force [1]

- (vii) The food value in matter —  
food' (IV a) [1]

[18]

'These eighteen material qualities have their own kinds and characteristics They have their own origination They are real and in a state of constant flux They are

---

IV (a) Pathavi dhātu, āpo dhātu, tejo dhātu, vāyo-dhātu bhūta-rupam nāma Cakkhu, sotam ghānam, jivhā, kāyo, pasāda-rupam nāma Rūpam, saddo, gandho, raso, āpodhātu-vajjitam bhūtattayasankhātam photthabbam gocararūpam nāma Itthattam, purisattam, bhāva-rūpam nāma Hadyavatthu hadayarūpam nāma Jivitindriyam jivita-rūpam nāma Kabalinkāro āhāro āhāra-rūpam nāma

## RECAPITULATION

To recapitulate, the following are the twenty-eight material properties —

<i>Mahā Bhūta</i>	4
Sensitive	5
Sensible	4
Sex	2
Seat of consciousness	1
Life-principle	1
Food value	1
	—

And,

Relative limitation	1
Expression	2
Conditions	3
Essential characteristics	4

---


$$10 + 18 = 28^*$$

(VI)

---

VI Bhūtappasādaṁ viśayā bhāvo hadayaṁ iccapi,  
 Jīvitaḥārarūpehi atthārasaviḍham tathā  
 Paricchedo ca viññatti vikāro lakkhaṇaṁ ti ca,  
 Anupphannā dasā ceti atthaviśaviḍham bhavē

## SECTION II

## §4 Classification of the material qualities

‘All the material qualities are *Ahetuka*, i.e., not rooted in the *Hetus* [which is possible only with the mental] They have only relative existence, they become the objects of attachment, they are composite, they are mundane, belonging to the *Kāma-Loka*, they are devoid of the faculty of cognising objects, and they are not to be annihilated \*

‘Again, from different principles, these may be divided in several ways, as given under — (VII)

‘The five sensitive material qualities [i.e., eye, ear, nose, tongue and touch] *pertain to the subject, and the others are external to it*

‘The five sensitive material qualities, and the seat of consciousness, these six, are the *organs* of the subject The others are *non organs*

‘The five sensitive material qualities, and the two kinds of expression, these seven, are called *Dvāra-Rūpa* or the ‘doors’ through which we receive information of the outer world The others are *Advāra* or non-doors.

\*Some philosophers hold that, in order to realise the true blissful nature of the spiritual self, it is necessary to annihilate the physical which is a bondage to it

Buddhism does not believe in the possibility of this, nor in the existence of a spiritual self apart from mind and matter

VII Sabbam ca pañetam rūpam ahetukam sappaccayam, sāsavam, sankhatam, lokiyam, kāmāvacaram, anārammanam, appahātābhavevā ti ekavādhampi ajjhatika-bāhirādi-vasena bahudhā bhedaṃ gacchati

‘The five sensitive material qualities, the two sexes, and the life principle, these eight, are called *Indriya-Rūpa* or the ‘material faculties’ The others are *Anindriya-Rūpa* or the non-faculties

‘The five sensitive and the seven sensible material qualities, these twelve, are gross, close to us, capable of striking mutually quite contrary to these, the others are subtle, not close, and not capable of striking mutually

‘The material quality generated by one’s own Karma is *self-earned* The others are not so

‘All kinds of form are *visible* The others are *not visible*

‘Eye and ear catch their objects from a distance, but nose, tongue and touch do it coming in contact with them These five are called *Gocaraggāhaka-Rūpa* or the material qualities capable of catching the sensible objects The others are not capable of this

‘Colour, smell, taste, food-value and the four *Mahā-Bhūtas* [earth, water, fire and air], these eight, are invariably present in all matter They cannot be separated from one another They are called *Avimbbhoga-Rūpa* or the inseparable material qualities The others are separable from one another’ (VIII)

---

VIII Pasāda sankhātam pañcavidhampi ajhattika-rūpam nāma, itaram bāhira-rūpam

Pasāda-hadaya-sankhātam chabbidhampi vatthu-rūpam nāma, Itaram avatthu rūpam

Pasāda-viññatti-sankhātam sattavidhampi dvāra-rūpam nāma, Itaram advāta-rūpam

Pasāda-bhāva jīvitāsankhātam attha vidham pi indriya-rūpam nāmā, Itaram anindriya-rūpam

‘Thus, the twenty-eight material qualities are classified as personal, non-personal and so on, according to different principles’ (IX)

---

Pasāda-vīṣayasankhātā dvādaśavidham pi oḷarika-rūpaṃ,  
santike-rūpaṃ sappatigha-rūpanca, itaram sukhuma-rūpaṃ dūre-  
rūpaṃ, appatigha-rūpaṃ ca

Kammajam upādinna-rūpaṃ, Itaram anupādinna-rūpaṃ

Rūpāyatanaṃ sanīdassana-rūpaṃ, Itaram anīdassana-rūpaṃ

Chakkādi-dvayaṃ asampatta-vasena, ghānādittiyam sampat-  
tavasenā ti pañca-vidhampi gocaraggāhika-rūpaṃ, itaraṃ ago-  
caraggāhika-rūpaṃ

Vanno, gandho, raso, ojā, bhūta-catukkaṃ ceti aṭṭhavidhampi  
aviniḍḍhoga-rūpaṃ, itaraṃ viniḍḍhoga-rūpaṃ

IX Iccevamaṭṭhavisatī-vidhampi ca vicakkhanā,

Ajjhattakādiḍḍhena vibhajanti yathārahaṃ

## SECTION III

*Samutthāna**[Generating principles]*§5 *The four generating principles*

‘The material qualities are being continuously generated by the four principles, namely, (a) Karma, (b) mind, (c) weather and (d) food’ (X)

Their continuous flow may be compared to the current of electricity, which is being generated by the dynamo every moment. In the case of a being, the particular nature of the material frame that it possesses has been conditioned by its previous Karmas. In the present birth, the particular state of its mind, the food that it takes, and the weather in which it lives are continuously generating the material qualities of its body in their own way

(a)

*Kamma-samutthāna Rūpa**[Material qualities being generated by Karma]*

‘Due to the result of the twenty-five types of *Kāmāvacara* and *Rūpāvacara* Karmas [*Kāmāvacara*, immoral 12 + moral 8 + *Rūpāvacara* 5 = 25], as the case may be, the material qualities in the person of the subject keep on being generated every moment, from the very first linking

---

X Kamman, cittaṃ, utu, āhāro ceti cattāni rūpasamutthānāni nāma



of consciousness at the beginning of his life [*Paṭisandhi*],

(XI)

(b)

*Citta-samutthāna Rūpa*

[Material qualities being generated by

the states of mind]

‘The seventy-five types of consciousness (with the exception of *Arūpa-Vipāka* [4] and the twice five-fold *Viññāna* [10]) start generating the material qualities in the person of the subject as soon as they take their rise, from the very first moment of *Bhavanga*’ (XII a)

‘A *Jhāna* state of active consciousness makes the posture of the *Yogāvacara* steady and calm. The types of *Votthāpāna*, *Kāmāvacara-Javana* and *Abhūñña* consciousness give rise to physical and vocal expression

‘The thirteen types of consciousness accompanied by delight [*Akusala Lobha* 4 + *Kusala* 4 + *Kiriyā* 4 + *Hasitup-pāda* 1 = 13] may cause laughter as well’ (XII b)

(c)

*Utu-samutthāna Rūpa*

[Material qualities being generated by

weather]

---

XI Tattha kāmāvacaram rūpāvacaram ceti pañcaviṣatīvidhampi kusalākusalakammamābhisaṅkhatam ajjattikasantāne kammāsamutthānarūpam paṭisandhimupādāya khane khane samutthāpeti

XII (a) Arūpavipāka-dvipañcaviññānācavajjutam pañcasattatīvidhampi cittam cittasamutthānarūpam paṭhama-bhavangamupādāya jāyantameva samutthāpeti

XII (b) Tattha appanā-javanam iriyāpatham pi sannāmeti Votthāpāna-kāmāvacarajavanābhūñña pana viññattampi samutthāpeti Somanassajavanāni panettha terasa hasanampi janenti

‘The material quality of temperature (fire), with its heating and cooling effects, generates the material qualities both in the organic and the inorganic bodies’ (XIII)

(d)

*Āhāra-samuṭṭhāna Rūpa*

[*Material qualities being generated by food*]

‘Food or the nutritive essence starts generating the material qualities in the person of the being as soon as it gets assimilated’ (XIV)

§6 *The scope of the four principles*

‘The seat of consciousness and the material faculties are produced by the Karmic resultant. The two kinds of expression [bodily and vocal] are produced only by the mind. Sound is produced by the mind and the temperature. The three material qualities of lightness, pliancy and adaptability are produced by the mind, the temperature and the food. The eight kinds of inseparable material qualities (= *Avimbbhoga-Rūpāṇi*) and the ‘space’ are produced by all the four principles. The material qualities of growth, continuance, decay and death (= *Lakkhana Rūpāṇi*) are not produced by any of the principles [but they are the very nature of all existence]’ (XV)

XIII Sītonhotusamaññātā tejodhāto thituppattā va utusamuṭṭhāna-rūpaṃ ayyhattam ca bahiddhā ca yathārahaṃ samuṭṭhāpeti

XIV Ojā-sankhāto āhāro āhārasamuṭṭhānārūpaṃ ajkjhoharanakāle thānappatto samuṭṭhāpeti

XV Taṭṭha hadaya-ndriya-rūpāṇi kammajāneva Viññāṭṭi-dvayam cittajameva Saddo cittotuyo I ahutāditṭayam utu-cittāhārehi sambhoti Avimbbhoga-rūpāṇi ceva ākāsadhātu ca catūhi sambhūtāni Lakkhana-rūpāṇi na kutoci jāyanti

## SUMMARY

(1) 'Karma produces eighteen kinds of material qualities [viz , *Avimbbhoga* 8+*Ākāsa* 1+*Hadaya* 1+*Indriya* 8=18]

(2) 'Mind produces fifteen kinds of material qualities [viz , *Avimbbhoga* 8+*Ākāsa* 1+*Sadda* 1+*Vikāra* 3+*Viññatti* 2=15]

(3) 'Weather (=temperature) produces thirteen kinds of material qualities [viz , *Avimbbhoga* 8+*Ākāsa* 1+*Vikāra* 3+*Sadda* 1=13]

(4) 'Food produces twelve kinds of material qualities [viz , *Avimbbhoga* 8+*Ākāsa* 1+*Vikāra* 3=12]

'Growth, continuance, decay and death are natural to all matter that exists They are not produced by any principle at all' (XVI)

---

XVI Atthārassa pannarassa terassa dvādasā ti ca,  
Kamma-cittotukāhārajāni honti yathākkamam  
Jāyamānādirūpānam sabhāvattā hi kevalam,  
Lakkhanāni na jāyanti kehici ti pakāsitam

## SECTION IV

*Kalāpa-Yojanā**[Grouping of the material qualities]*

Material bodies are nothing but groups of qualities, coming together in different manners and proportions, that constitute them and exist in and with them. Such a group of qualities is called a *Kalāpa*.

There are altogether twenty-one kinds of *Kalāpa*, of which nine are produced by Karma, six by mind, four by weather, and two by food.

‘There are twenty-one groups of co-existing qualities that constitute the same matter, and that arise and pass away simultaneously’ (XVII)

## I

§7 *Kamma-samutthāna Kalāpa**[Groups of qualities arising from previous Karma]*

‘These are the nine groups of material qualities arising as a result of the previous Karma —

(1) ‘*Calakkhu-Dasaka*, the group of ten qualities including the sensitive organ of eye as one [viz, the eight inseparable qualities, vitality and the eye]

(2-8) ‘Similarly, the eight inseparable qualities and vitality, together with ‘ear’, constitute the *Sota-Dasaka*, together with ‘nose’, constitute the *Ghāṇa-Dasaka*, together with ‘tongue’, constitute the *Jivhā-Dasaka*, together with

---

XVII Ekuppādā ekanirodhā ekanissayā sahavuttino ekavīsati rūpakalāpā nāma

the 'body', constitute the *Kāya-Dasaka*, together with the 'female sex,' constitute the *Itthi Bhāva-Dasaka*, together with the 'male sex', constitute the *Pumbhāva-Dasaka*, and together with the seat of consciousness, constitute the *Vatthu-Dasaka*

(9) '*Jivita-Navaka*, the group of nine qualities, including 'vitality' as one, [viz, the eight inseparable qualities and vitality]' (XVIII)

## II

### §8 *Citta-samutthāna-Kalāpa*

[Groups of qualities arising as a result of the states of mind]

'The following are the six groups that arise as a result of the states of mind —

(1) '*Suddhatthaka*, the simple group of only the eight inseparable qualities.

(2) '*Kāya-Viññatti-Navaka*, the group of nine qualities including the 'physical expression' as one [viz, the eight inseparable qualities, and the quality of 'physical expression]'

(3) '*Vaci-Viññatti-Dasaka*, the group of ten qualities including the 'vocal expression' as one [viz, the eight inseparable, the quality of 'vocal expression', and the quality of sound]

---

XVIII Tattha jivitam avinibbhogarūpam ca cakkhunā saha cakkhudasakam tī pavuccatī Tathā sotādihi saddhim sota-dasakam, ghānadasakam, jivhādasakam, kāya-dasakam itthibhāva-dasakam, pumbhāva-dasakam, vatthu-dasakam, cetī yathākkamam yojetabbam Avinibbhoga-rūpameva jivitena saha jivitanavakanti pavuccatī Ime nava kamma-samuṭṭhānakalāpā

(4) '*Lahutādekādasaka*, the group of eleven qualities including the qualities of lightness and others [viz , the eight inseparable, lightness, pliancy and adaptability]

(5) '*Kāya-Viññatti-Lahutādi-Dvādasaka*, the group of twelve qualities including the 'physical expression' and lightness and others [viz , the eight inseparable, the quality of physical expression, lightness, pliancy and adaptability]

(6) '*Vaci Viññatti-Sadda-Lahutādi-Terasaka*, the group of thirteen qualities including 'vocal expression', sound, and lightness and others [viz , the eight inseparable, the quality of vocal expression, sound, lightness, pliancy and adaptability]' (XIX)

### III

#### §9 *Utu-samutthāna-Kalāpa*

[*Groups of qualities arising as a result of the influence of weather*]

'The following are the four groups of qualities arising as a result of the influence of weather —

(1) '*Suddhatthaka*, the simple group of only the eight inseparable qualities

(2) '*Sadda-Navaka*, the group of nine qualities including 'sound' as one [viz , the eight inseparable and the quality of sound]

(3) '*Lahutādekādasaka*, the group of eleven qualities

---

XIX Avinibbhoga-rūpam pana suddhatthakam Tadeva kāya-viññattiyā saha kāya-viññattinavakam, vaci-viññattisaddehi ca saha vaciviññatti-dasakam Lahutādihi saddhim lahutādekādasakam Kāya-viññattilāhutādīdvādasakam, vaciviññattisaddalahutādīterasakam ceti cha cittasamutthāna-kalāpa

including lightness and others [viz, the eight inseparable, lightness, pliancy and adaptability]

(4) '*Sadda-Lahutādi-Dvādasaka*, the group of twelve qualities including 'sound' and lightness and others [viz, the eight inseparable, the quality of sound, lightness, pliancy and adaptability]' (XX)

(IV)

#### §10 *Āhāra-samutthāna-Kalāpa*

[Groups of qualities arising as a result of the assimilation of food]

'The following are the two groups arising as a result of the assimilation of food —

(1) '*Suddhatthaka*, the simple group of only the eight inseparable qualities

(2) '*Lahutādekādasaka*, the group of eleven qualities including the qualities of lightness and others [viz, the eight inseparable, lightness, pliancy and adaptability]' (XXI)

#### §11 *The places of their occurrence*

'Among the above twenty-one kinds of groups, the two—the simple group of only the eight inseparable qualities, and the group of nine including 'sound' as one—arising from the influence of weather are found both in the animate and the inanimate bodies. But the

---

XX Suddhattakam, saddanavakam, lahutādekādasakam sadda-lahutādi-dvādasakam ceti cattāro utusamutthāna-kalāpā

XXI Suddhatthakam, lahutādekādasakam ceti dve āhāra-samutthāna-kalāpā

other kinds of groups are found only in the animate bodies' (XXII)

### SUMMARY

'There are twenty-one kinds of the groups of material qualities, of which nine arise from Karma, six from the states of mind, four from the influence of weather, and two from the assimilation of food

'The material qualities of 'space', and the 'four characteristics' of all existence (viz, growth, continuance, decay and death) are not considered as factors of a group, for, the quality of 'space' is nothing but a relative limitation amongst two or more groups, and the four characteristics are nothing but the essential nature of all the groups' (XXIII)

---

XXII Tattha suddhatthakam, saddanavakam ceti dve utu-samuṭṭhāna-kalāpā bahiddhā pi labbhanti, avasesā pana sabbe pi ajjhāttikameva

XXIII Kamma cittotulāhāra-samuṭṭhānā yathākkamam  
Nava cha caturo dve ti kalāpā ekavīsati  
Kalāpānam pariccheda-lakkhanattā vicakkhanā,  
Na kalāpangamiccāhu akāsam lakkhanāni ca



## SECTION V

*Rūpa ppavatti kkamo*

[The modes of function of the material qualities]

§12 In the *Kāmaloka*

'All the kinds of material qualities are found in the growth of the bodies of different beings in *Kāmaloka*. At the inceptive stage of the *Sansedaja*\* and *Opapātuka*† beings, when the first moment of consciousness arises in them, the following seven groups, at the most, may be got by them —

(1) '*Cakkhu-Dasaka* [viz, the eight inseparable, vitality and eye]

(2) '*Sota Dasaka* [viz, the eight inseparable, vitality and ear]

(3) '*Ghāna Dasaka* [viz, the eight inseparable, vitality and nose]

(4) '*Jivhā-Dasaka* [viz, the eight inseparable, vitality and tongue]

(5) '*Kāya-Dasaka* [viz, the eight inseparable, vitality and touch]

(6) '*Bhāva-Dasaka* [viz, the eight inseparable, vitality and sex]

(7) '*Vatthu-Dasaka* [viz, the eight inseparable, vitality and heart]

'At the least, *Cakkhu-Dasaka*, *Sota-Dasaka*, *Ghāna Dasaka* and *Bhāva-Dasaka* might be missing in them. In that case,

\* Worms and insects which are born themselves from moisture.

† Self-born beings, appearing suddenly independent of parents, such as the being of hell and of the realms higher than the *Āvātinsa*.

they should be thought as devoid of those particular groups

‘The following three groups are got by the beings that are conceived in the womb of mother—*Kāya-Dasaka*, *Bhāva-Dasaka* and *Vatthu-Dasaka*

‘In the case of beings devoid of sex, the *Bhāva Dasaka* may be missing

‘As the being grows, *Cakkhu-Dasaka* and the other groups are developed in him in due course’ (XXIV)

### §13 At the time of death

‘And, thus the process of the groups of the material qualities, being generated by the four principles—i.e., by Karma from the moment of *Paṭisandhu*, by the states of mind from the second moment of consciousness, by the influences of the weather from the moment the being has come into existence, and by food from the time it is assimilated—continues on, like the flame of the lamp or the current of the river, as long as he survives’ (XXV)

‘At the time of his death, as soon as he gets the seven-teenth thought-moment of his *Cuti* consciousness [i.e.,

---

XXIV Sabbāni pi pañcāni rūpāni kāma-loke yathāraham anū-nāni pavattiyam upalabbhanti Paṭisandhiyam pana samsedajānam ceva opapātikanam ca cakkhu sota-ghāna-jivhākāya-bhāva-vatthu-dasakasankhātāni satta dasakāni pātubhavanti ukkaṭṭhavase-na, Omakavaseṇa pana cakkhu-sotaghāna-bhāva-dasakāni kadāci pi na labbhanti Tasmā tesam vāseṇa kalāpahāni veditabbā Gabbha-scyyaka-sattānam pana kāya-bhāva-vatthu-dasakasankhātāni tūni dasakāni pātubhavanti Itthāpi bhāvadasakam kadāci pi na labbhati Fato param pavatukāle kameṇa cakkhudasakādini ca pātubhavanti

XXV Icevama paṭisandhimupādāya kammāsamutṭhānā, dutiya-cittamupādāya cūṭṭasamutṭhānā, tītikālamupādāya utusamutṭhānā, ojaṭṭharanamupādāya āhārasamutṭhānā ceti catusamutṭhāna-upakalāpasantati kāmaloce dīpa-jalā vīya nadīsoto vīya ca yāvata-yukamābboccinam pavattati

when the last course of cognition is complete upon any of the three objects, namely, *Kamma*, *Kamma-Nimitta* and *Gati Nimitta*, the process of the material qualities produced by Karma is cut off. The material qualities which have been generated up to the last moment by Karma ceases with the *Cuti*-consciousness. Then the 'mind' and also the 'Nutrition of food' cease to continue their process. And then the 'weather' continues to work on the dead-body, as long as it exist' (XXVI)

'In this manner, wherever the being is born after death, the material qualities function in him from the very first moment of consciousness, arising at the beginning of his life' (XXVII)

#### §14 In the *Rūpa Loka*

'The following groups do not exist in the *Rūpaloka* —

*Ghāna-Dasaka,*

*Ṭvāha Dasaka,*

*Kāya-Dasaka,*

*Bhāva-Dasaka,*

and the groups that are produced as a result of the nutrition of food

'Therefore, the beings of the *Rūpaloka* get only the following four groups arising from Karma at the moment of *Patisandhi* —

#### (1) *Cakkhu-Dasaka*

XXVI Marana kāle pana cuticittopari-sattarasamācittassa thitukālamupādāya kammaja-rūpāni nuppajjanti. Puretaramuppannāni ca kammajarūpāni cuticittasamakārameva pavattitvā nirujjhanti. Tato param cittajāhārarūpam ca vocchijjati. Tato param utusamutthānarūpaparamparā yāva matakalevarasankhātā pavattanti.

XXVII Icevā matasattānam punadeva bhavātare, Patisandhimupādāya tathārūpam pavattati.

- (2) *Sota-Dasaka*
- (3) *Vatthu-Dasaka*
- (4) *Jīvita-Navaka*

‘In their life-time, they also get all the groups produced as a result of the states of mind and the weather.

‘The unconscious beings do not even have eye, ear, heart, sound and all the material qualities that arise from the mind. Therefore, at the time of *Paṭisandhī*, they have only the group of *Jīvitanaṇḍa* [i.e., the eight inseparable and vitality] In their life-time, they get also the other qualities that arise from the influences of weather, with the exception of sound’ (XXVIII a)

#### SUMMARY

‘Thus in *Kāmaloka*, *Rūpaloka* and the realm of the unconscious beings, the material qualities function in two ways, namely, at the moment of *Paṭisandhī*, and in the course of life’ (XXVIII b)

‘All the twenty-eight kinds of material qualities are found in the beings of *Kāmaloka*. In the beings of the *Rūpaloka* there are only twenty-three [with the exception of nose, tongue, body, male sex, and female sex] The

---

XXVIII (a) *Rūpaloke* pane *ghāna-ñvā-kāya-bhāva-dasakāni* ceva *āhārajakālāpāni* ca na labbhanti. Tasmā tesam *paṭisandhikāle* cakkhusota-vatthu-vaṣeṇa tīni *dasakāni* *jīvitanaṇḍa* ceti caitāro *kammasamutthāna-kālāpā* pavattiyam *cittotasamutthānā* ca labbhanti.

*Asaññasattānam* pañcakkhu *sota-vatthu-saddāni* pi na labbhanti. Tathā *sobbāni* pi *cittajarūpāni*. Tasmā tesam *paṭisandhikāle* *jīvitanaṇḍa* kameva, pavattiyam ca *sadda-vajjitam* *utusaṇḍāna-rūpam* atiricchati.

(b) *Icevām* *kāmarūpāsaññisankhātesu* tīsu *thānesu* *paṭisandhi-pavattivasena* *duvidhā rūpapavatti* *veditabbā*.

unconscious beings have only seventeen [eight inseparable, vitality, lightness, pliancy, adaptability, space, growth, continuance, decay and death]

‘The beings of the *Arūpaloka* have no material qualities at all

‘The following kinds of qualities are not obtained at the moment of *Patisandhi*—sound, lightness, pliancy, adaptability, the two modes of expression, decay and death

‘All the material qualities are obtained during the course of the life of the beings’ (XXIX)

---

XXIX Atthavisatī kāmesu honti tevīsa rūpīsu  
Sattarasevasaññīnam arūpe natthi kiñci pi  
Saddo vikāro jaratā maranam copapattiyaṃ,  
Na labbhanti pavattesu na kiñci pi na labbhati

## SECTION VI

§15 *Nibbāna*[*The Summum Bonum*]

'*Nibbāna* means a complete and final liberation from 'Vāna' or desire. It is the object of the types of *Magga* and *Phala* consciousness, and is realised [in four grades] by the *insight* of the four types of the Supra mundane *Magga* consciousness' (XXX a)

'This *Nibbāna* is, in its nature, single, but it is treated as twofold in one way, namely, (1) *Nibbāna* with the remaining life, and (2) one without it. There are three modes of it, namely, (1) *Suñña* or void, (2) *Animitta* or distinctionless and (3) *Appamhutta* or desireless' (XXX b)

'The great seers, free from desire, call *Nibbāna* by the following epithets —

*Accuta Pada*, the attainment from which there is no fall

*Accanta*, the boundless

*Asankhata*, the Pure, the unconditioned

---

XXX (a) *Nibbānam pana lokuttarasankhātam catumaggañānena sacchikātābham maggaphalānāmārammanabhūtam vānasankhātāya tanhāya nikkhantattā nibbānam ti pavuccati.*

(b) *Tadātam sabbhāvato ekavidhampi saupādisesaṇibbānadhātu anupādisesaṇibbānadhātu ceti duvidham hoti kāranapariyāyena. Tathā suññatampi anāmitam appamhutam ceti tividham hoti ākāra-bhedena.*

*Anuttara*, the Supreme ' (XXXI)

'The Buddhas teach that in reality there are only these four categories, namely, *Citta*, *Cetasika*, *Rūpa* and *Nibbāna* ' (XXXII)

- 
- XXXI Padamaccutamaccantam asankhatamanuttaram,  
 Nibbānamiti bhāsantī vanamuttā mahesayo  
 XXXII Iti cittam cetasikam rūpam nibbānaniccapī,  
 Paramattham pakāsentī catudhā va tathāgatā

## CHAPTER VII

### SAMUCCAYA

(*The collection of Abhidhammic terms*)

#### §1 *Introductory*

‘There are seventy-two entities having their own distinctive characteristics [viz , all the types of consciousness counted as 1+psychic factors 52+generated material qualities 18+*Nibbāna* 1=72]

‘Now we are going to enumerate the different Abhidhammic terms associated with them, under four heads, namely, (A) of the immoral, (B) of the mixed, (C) of those that pertain to enlightenment, and (D) miscellaneous’  
(I-II)

#### (A)

#### §2 *Of the immoral*

(a-c) *Āsava, Ogha and Yoga*

\**Kāma* (=sense-desires), *Bhava* (=love-for-living), *Ditthi* (=false view) and *Avijjā* (=ignorance), these four, are called *Āsava* or that which persist in all beings except the Arhat

‘They are also called *Ogha* or flood, because they are difficult to cross, and *Yoga* or bondage, because they keep

---

I Dvāsattatividhā vuttā vatthudhammā salakkhanā,

Tisam dāni yathiyogam pavakkhāmi samuccayam

II Akusala-sangaho, missaka-sangaho, bodhipakkhiyasangaho,  
sabbasangaho ceti samuccaya-sangaho catubbiddho veditabbo



the beings from realising the Summum Bonum ' (III V)

(d) *Ganhā* (ties)

'The following are the four ties —(1) covetousness, (2) ill-will, (3) the belief that the practice of mere rites and rituals may lead to purity and (4) the dogmatic belief that 'mine alone is truth' (VI)

(e) *Upādāna* (grasping)

'These are the four graspings —(1) of sense-desires, (2) of false view, (3) of mere rite and ritualism and (4) of a theory of soul' (VII)

(f) *Nīvarana* (hindrances)

'These are the six *Nīvarana* or hindrances to the practice of *Jhāna* and insight —(1) sensual passion, (2) ill-will, (3) sloth and-torpor, (4) distraction and worry, (5) perplexity and (6) ignorance' (VIII)

(g) *Anusaya* (latent bias)

'These are the seven forms of *Anusaya* or latent-bias —(1) sensual passion, (2) love-for-life, (3) aversion, (4) conceit, (5) false view, (6) perplexity and (7) ignorance'

(IX)

III Katham? Akusalasangahe tāva, cattāro āsavā, kāmāsavo, bhavāsavo, diṭṭhāsavo, avijjāsavo

IV Cattāro oghā, Kāmogho, bhavogho, diṭṭhogho, avijjogho

V Cattāro yogā, Kāmayogo, bhavayogo, diṭṭhiyogo, avijjāyogo

VI Cattāro ganhā, Abhujjhā kāyagantho, byāpādo kāyagantho, sīlabbataparāmāso kāyagantho, idamsaccābhiniveso kāyagantho

VII Cattāro upādānā—Kāmapādānam, diṭṭhupādānam, sīlabbatupādānam, attavādupādānam

VIII Cha nīvaranāni—kāmacchanda nīvaranam, byāpāda-nīvaranam, thūnamiddha nīvaranam, uddhacca-kukkucca-nīvaranam, vicikicchā-nīvaranam, avijjānīvaranam

IX Sattānusayā—kāmarāgānusayo, bhavarāgānusayo, paṭighānusayo, mānānusayo, diṭṭhānusayo, vicikicchānusayo, avijjānusayo

(h) *Samyojana* (fetters)

‘These are the ten *Samyojana* or fetters that bind creatures in the rounds of misery, according to the *Suttanta* — (1) love for living in the *Kāmaloka*, (2) love for living in the *Rūpaloka*, (3) love for living in the *Arūpaloka*, (4) aversion, (5) conceit, (6) false view, (7) belief that the external rituals may lead to purity, (8) perplexity, (9) distraction and (10) ignorance’ (X)

‘Again these are the ten *Samyojana* according to the *Abhidhamma*—(1) sensual passion, (2) love for living, (3) aversion, (4) conceit, (5) false view, (6) belief that the external rituals may lead to purity, (7) perplexity, (8) envy, (9) selfishness and (10) ignorance’ (XI)

(i) *Kilesa* (the defiling elements)

‘These are the ten *Kilesa* or defilements — (1) desire, (2) hate, (3) dullness, (4) conceit, (5) false view, (6) perplexity, (7) sloth, (8) distraction, (9) impudence and (10) recklessness’ (XII)

X *Dasa samyojanāni*—*kāmarāga-samyojanam*, *rūpa-rāga-samyojanam*, *arūparāga-samyojanam*, *paṭighasamyojanam*, *mānasamyojanam*, *diṭṭhi-samyojanam*, *silabbataparāmāsa-samyojanam*, *vicikicchā-samyojanam*, *uddhacca-samyojanam*, *avijjā-samyojanam*, *Suttante*

XI *Aparāni dasa samyojanāni*—*kāmarāga-samyojanam*, *bhavarāga-samyojanam*, *paṭigha-samyojanam*, *māna-samyojanam*, *diṭṭhi-samyojanam*, *silabbataparāmāsa-samyojanam*, *vicikicchā-samyojanam*, *lobha-samyojanam*, *macchariya-samyojanam*, *avijjā-samyojanam*, *Abhidhamme*

XII *Dasa kilesā*—*lobho*, *dosa*, *moho*, *māno*, *diṭṭhi*, *vicikicchā*, *thīnam*, *uddhaccam*, *ahirikam*, *anottappam*

## SUMMARY

‘Now in the above divisions, *Kāma* (sense-desire) and *Bhava* (love-for-living), these two, are the same as *Tanhā* or craving

‘And the belief that the performance of rites and rituals will lead to purity, the dogmatic belief that mine alone is truth, and the belief in the existence of a soul, these three, are the same as *Ditthi* or false view’ (XIII)

Thus, in reality, there are only—

(1) three *Āsava* [*Kāma* and *Bhava* being considered as one],

(2) three *Ogha* [*Kāma* and *Bhava* being considered as one],

(3) three *Yoga* [*Kāma* and *Bhava* being considered as one],

(4) three *Gantha* or ties [the last two ties being considered as one],

(5) two *Upādāna* or grasping [the last three being considered as one],

(6) eight *Nīvarana* or hindrances to *Jhāna* and insight [by splitting up the 3rd and the 4th into four],

(7) six *Anusaya* or forms of latent bias [the first two being considered as one],

(8) nine *Samyojana* or fetters [*Ditthi* and *Sīlabbata-pārāmāsā* being considered as one], and

(9) ten *Kilesa* or the defiling elements

---

XIII Āsavādisu panettha kāmabhavanāmena tabbatthukā tanhā adhippetā, sīlabbataparāmāso, idamsaccābhiniṃso, attavādo ti ca tathā pavattam ditthigatameva pavuccati

‘Thus the terms connected with immoral consciousness are enumerated under nine heads’ (XIV)

(B)

§3 *Of the mixed*

(a) *Hetu*

‘The terms enumerated under the present head belong to both the moral and the immoral qualities. Thus there are six *Hetus*, namely —

*Immoral*—(1) ‘*Lobha*, greed, (2) *Dosa*, hate, (3) *Moha*, dullness and deception,

*Moral*—(4) ‘*Alobha*, selfsacrificingness, (5) *Adosa*, goodwill, (6) *Amoha*, insight’ (XV)

(b) *Jhānanga* (the constituents of *Jhāna*)

‘These are the seven constituents of *Jhāna*, namely —

*Moral and Immoral*—(1) *Vitakka*, applying the mind on the object, (2) *Vicāra*, sustaining the mind on it, (3) *Pīti*, a thrill of pleasant sensation, (4) *Ekaggatā*, concentration, (5) *Somanassa*, delight, (6) *Upekkhā*, indifference,

*Immoral*—(7) *Domanassa* or excitement with antipathy (XVI)

(c) *Magganga* (constituents of the Path)

‘These are the twelve constituents of the Path [either leading to *Nibbāna* or away from it]—

- XIV Āsavoghā ca yogā ca tayo ganthā ca vitthuto,  
Upādānā duve vuttā aṭṭha nivṛṇāṇā siyumu  
Chalcvānusiyā honti nava samyojanā matā,  
kilesā c’iṣa vuttoyam navadhā pāpasangho

XV Mīsakasangho cha hetū-Lobho, doso, moho, Alobho, adoso amoho

XVI Satta jhānangāni—vitakko, vicāro, pīti, ekaggatā, somanasam, domanassam, upekkhā

*Moral*—(1) *Sammā-Diṭṭhi*, right view, (2) *Sammā San-kappa*, right aspiration, (3) *Sammā-Vācā*, right language, (4) *Sammā Kammanta*, right action, (5) *Sammā Ājīva*, right livelihood, (6) *Sammā Vāyāma*, right endeavour, (7) *Sammā Sati*, right mindfulness, (8) *Sammā-Samādhi*, right concentration

*Immoral*—(9) *Micchā-Diṭṭhi*, wrong view, (10) *Micchā-Sankappa*, wrong aspiration, (11) *Micchā-Vāyāma*, wrong endeavour, (12) *Micchā Samādhi*, wrong concentration ' (XVII)

(d) *Indriya (the faculties)*

'These are the twenty-two guiding faculties of our personality—(1) eye, (2) ear, (3) nose, (4) tongue, (5) touch, (6) female sex, (7) male sex, (8) life, (9) mind, (10) pleasure, (11) pain, (12) delight, (13) antipathy, (14) indifference, (15) *Saddhā* or faith (16) energy, (17) *Sati* or mindfulness, (18) concentration, (19) reason, (20) the feeling that I shall realise what is not yet realised, (21) partial realisation and (22) the final realisation ' (XVIII)

(e) *Balāni (the forces)*

'These are the nine forces in us —

*Moral*—(1) *Saddhā*, faith, (2) *Viriya*, energy, (3) *Sati*,

---

XVII Dvādaśa maggaṅgāni—sammādiṭṭhi, sammāsankappo, sammāvācā, sammākammanto, sammā-ājīvo, sammāvāyāmo, sammā-sati, sammāsamādhi, micchādiṭṭhi, micchāsankappo, micchāvāyāmo, micchāsamādhi

XVIII Bāvisatindriyāni—cakkhundriyam, sotindriyam, ghānindriyam, jivhindriyam, kāvindriyam, itthindriyam, purisindriyam, jvutindriyam, manindriyam, sukhindriyam, dukkhindriyam, somanassindriyam, domanassindriyam, upekkhindriyam, saddhindriyam, viriyindriyam, satindriyam, samādhindriyam, paññindriyam, anaññātāññassāmītindriyam, aññindriyam, aññātāvindriyam

mindfulness, (4) *Samādhi*, concentration, (5) *Paññā*, reason, (6) *Hiri*, modesty, (7) *Ottappa*, discretion,

*Immoral*—(8) *Ahrika*, impudency, (9) *Anotappa* shamelessness' (XIX)

(f) *Adhipati* (the dominating factors in us)

'These are the four dominating factors in us —

*Moral and immoral*—(1) *Chanda*, an urge to do, (2) *Citta*, thought (active), (3) *Viriya*, energy.

*Moral*—(4) *Vimansā*, the will to investigate' (XX)

(g) *Āhāra* (the modes of nutrition)

'These are the four modes of nutrition —

(1) '*Kabalikāra*, the food that can be taken.

(2) '*Phassa*, contact

(3) '*Manosañcetanā*, the volitional activity of the mind

(4) '*Viññāna*, the *Patisandhi*-consciousness' (XXI)

### SUMMARY

'Now about the last three kinds of *Indriya* —the feeling that I shall realise what is not yet realised is the knowledge of the Path of stream-attainment the final realisation is the same as the knowledge of the fruition of Arahatahood, and the partial realisation is the knowledge of the six stages between these two [viz, *Sotāpathi Phala*, *Sakadāgāmimagga*, *Sakadāgāmi-phala*, *Anāgāmi-magga*, *Anāgāmi-phala*, *Arahatta-magga*]

---

XIX Nava balāni—Saddhā-balam, viriya-balam, satibalam, samādhi-balam, paññā-balam, hiri-balam, ottappa-balam, ahirika-balam, anotappa-balam

XX Cattāro adhipatī—chandādhīpatī, cittādhīpatī, viriyādhīpatī, vimamsādhīpatī

XXI Cattāro āhāra—kabalikāro āhāro, phasso dutiyo, manosañcetanā tatīyā, viññānam catuttham

‘*Jīvitindriya* (life) is two-fold, namely, (1) of the matter and (2) of the mind’ (XXII)

‘The constituents of *Jhāna* are not found in the twice fivefold *Viññāna*, the forces in the states devoid of energy [viz, *Pañcadvārāvajjana* 1+twice five fold *Viññāna* 10+*Sampaticchana* 2+*Santīrana* 3=16], and the constituents of the Path in the types of *Ahetuka*-consciousness’

‘In the type of perplexed consciousness concentration is so feeble that it can not be developed to function as a constituent-of-the-path, or an *Indriya*, or a *Bala* (force) \*

‘Among the four dominating factors [viz, *Chanda*, *Citta*, *Viriya* and *Vimansā*], only one may arise at a time only in those types of consciousness which are accompanied by either two or three *Hetu*’

‘Thus, these terms, both moral and immoral, have been enumerated under seven heads, as under —

- |                                                          |   |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---|
| (i) <i>Hetu</i>                                          | 6 |
| (ii) Constituents of <i>Jhāna</i>                        | 5 |
| [ <i>Somanassa</i> , <i>Domanassa</i> and <i>Upekkhā</i> |   |
| being treated as one, i.e., <i>Vedanā</i> ]              |   |
| (iii) Constituents of the Path                           | 9 |

XXII *Indriyesu panettha sotāpattimaggañānam anaññitūññārasāmitindriyam arahattaphalañānam aññitāvindriyam*

*Majhe cha ñānāni aññindriyāni ti vuccanti Jīvitindriyam ca rūpārūpavasena duvidham hoti*

XXIII *Pañcaviññānesu jhānagāmi, avriyesu bahūni hetukesu maggagāmi na labbhanti Tathā vicikicchā-citte ekaggatā magga-indriyabalabhāvam na gacchati*

*Dvīhetuka-tīhetukajavaneseva yathāsambhavam adhipatti ekova labbhati*

\*That is, it can not function as *Sammā-Samādhi*, *Micchā-Samādhi*, *Samādhindriya*, or *Samādhi-Bala*

[*Sammā-Sankappa* and *Micchā-Sankappa* are nothing but the two directions of *Vitakka*, they should be, therefore, treated as one Similarly, *Micchā-Vāyāma* and *Sammā-Vāyāma* should be treated as one, both being the kinds of *Vuriya* *Micchā-Samādhi* and *Sammā-Samādhi* both are concentration of the mind, therefore, they should be also treated as one]

- (4) *Indriya*, the guiding faculties .. 16  
 [10 to 14 should be taken as one *Vedanindriya* The last four, i.e., 'reason' and the remaining three *Indriya* of the Supra-mundane plane, should be taken as one, being the different stages of 'knowledge' The eighth *Indriya*, i.e., 'life' should be counted as two, being that of matter and of mind]
- (5) '*Bala*, the forces 9  
 (6) '*Adhipati*, the dominating factors in us 4  
 (7) '*Āhārā*, the forms of nutrition ' 4

(XXIV)

(C)

§4 *Of those that pertain to enlightenment*(a) *Satipaṭṭhāna* (constant awareness)

XXIV Cha hetū pañca jhānangā maggaṅgā nava vatthuto,  
 Solaṣindriyadhammā ca baladhammā naveritā  
 Cattāro dhipatī vuttā tathāhārā ti sattadhā,  
 Kusalādisanākinno vutto missakasangaho



‘There are four practices of constant awareness, namely —

- (1) *Kāyānupassanā*, constant awareness of one’s physical states
- (2) *Vedanānupassanā*, constant awareness of the states of one’s feeling
- (3) *Cittānupassanā*, constant awareness of the states of one’s mind
- (4) *Dhammānupassanā*, constant awareness of the Dharma’s ’ (XXV)

[See *Dīghanikāya*, *Mahāsāṭipatthānasutta* ]

(b) *Sammāpādhāna* (the Right Efforts)

‘These are the four Right Efforts —

- (1) ‘The effort to put away evils that have arisen
- (2) ‘The effort to prevent the arising of unrisen evils
- (3) ‘The effort to bring about the arising of unrisen good
- (4) ‘The effort to further the good that has already arisen ’ (XXVI)

(c) *Iddhipāda* (the Psychic Powers)

‘These are the four Psychic Powers —

- (1) ‘The urge to do

XXV Bodhipakkhiya-sangahe cattāro satipaṭṭhānā-kāyānupassanā-satipaṭṭhānam, vedanānupassanā satipaṭṭhānam, cittānupassanā-satipaṭṭhānam, dhammānupassanā-satipaṭṭhānam

XXIV Cattāro sammāpādhānā—uppannānam pāpakānam dhammānam pahānāya vāyāmo, anuppannānam pāpakānam dhammānam anuppādāya vāyāmo, anuppannānam kusalanānam dhammānam uppādāya vāyāmo, uppannānam kusalanānam dhammānam bhūyobhāvāya vāyāmo

- (2) 'The active thought
- (3) 'Energy
- (4) 'The will to investigate' (XXVII)

(d) *Indriya* (the guiding faculties)

'These are the five guiding Faculties —

- (1) 'Faith
- (2) 'Energy
- (3) 'Constant awareness
- (4) 'Concentration
- (5) 'Reason' (XXVIII)

(e) *Balāṃ* (the Forces)

'These are the five Forces in us —

- (1) 'Faith
- (2) 'Energy
- (3) 'Constant awareness
- (4) 'Concentration
- (5) 'Reason' (XXIX)

(f) *Bojjhanga* (the factors of Enlightenment)

'These are the seven factors through the practice of which one may attain Enlightenment —

- (1) 'Constant awareness
- (2) 'Search after the truth
- (3) 'Energy.

---

XXVII Cattāroiddhipādā—Chāroiddhipādo, cittidhipādo,  
viriyiddhipādo, vimāṇsiddhipādo

XXVIII Pañcendriyāni—sāddhindriyam, viriyindriyam,  
satindriyam, samādhindriyam, paññindriyam

XXIX Pañca balāṃ—saddhā-balam, viriya-balam, satibalam,  
samādhī-balam, paññābalam

- (4) 'A thrill of pleasant sensation
- (5) 'Serenity
- (6) 'Concentration
- (7) 'Equanimity' (XXX)
- (g) *Magganga* (constituents of the Path)
- 'These are the eight constituents of the Path —
- (1) 'Right view
- (2) 'Right aspiration
- (3) 'Right language
- (4) 'Right action
- (5) 'Right livelihood
- (6) 'Right endeavour
- (7) 'Right mindfulness
- (8) 'Right concentration' (XXXI)

## SUMMARY

'Now, among these, the four *Satipatthāna* are the same as *Sammā-Sati* (right mindfulness)

'The four *Sammāppadhāna* (the ways of Right Effort) are the same as *Sammā-Vāyāma* (right endeavour)' (XXXII)

'Thus, the above thirty-seven terms have been described under seven heads, as follows —

XXX Satta bojjhangā—sati-sambojjhango, dhammavicaya-sambojjhango, viriyasambojjhango, piṭṭhasambojjhango, passaddhi-sambojjhango, samādhisambojjhango, upekkhāsambojjhango

XXXI Attha maggāṅgaṇi—sammā diṭṭhi, sammā-sankappo, sammā vācā, sammā-kammanto, sammā ājīvo, sammā-vāyāmo, sammā sati, sammā-samādhi

XXXII Ettha pana, cattāro satipatthānā ti sammāsati ekā va pavuccati, tathā cattāro sammāppadhānā ti ca sammā vāyāmo

(i) 'Satipatthāna	4
(ii) 'Sammāpādhāna	4
(iii) 'Iddhi-Pāda	4
(iv) 'Indriya	5
(v) 'Bala	5
(vi) 'Bojjhanga	7
(vii) 'Magganga	8
	<hr/> 37

Now considering

- (a) the four *Satipatthāna* = *Sammā Satī*, and  
 (b) the four *Sammāpādhāna* = *Sammā-Vāyāma*, they  
 are in reality only of fourteen kinds, as under —

(i) 'Satipatthāna = <i>Sammāsati</i>	1
(ii) 'Sammāpādhāna = <i>Sammā Vāyāma</i>	1
(iii) <i>Iddhipāda</i> = <i>Chanda, Citta, Vīmaṇsa</i>	3
(iv) <i>Indriya</i> = <i>Saddhā, Samādhi</i>	2
(v) <i>Bala</i>	0
(vi) <i>Bojjhanga</i> = <i>Pīti, Passaddhi, Upekkhā</i>	3
(vii) <i>Magganga</i> = <i>Sammā-Vācā, Kammanā,</i> <i>Ājiva, Saṅkappa,</i>	4
	<hr/> 14

(XXXIII)

'In the above enumeration of terms pertaining to Enlightenment —

XXXIII Chando c'ittamupekkhā ca raddhāpāssaddhipāṇiyo,  
 Sammāsatī samādhi ti cūḍāsete saṅkhāvato,  
 Sattatimsippibhiedena sattadhā tatha saṅgaho

(a) the following nine have been considered only once —

- 1 *Sammā-Sankappa*, right aspiration
- 2 *Passaddhī Bojjhanga*, serenity
- 3 *Pīti Bojjhanga*, a thrill of pleasant sensation
- 4 *Upekkhā Bojjhanga*, equanimity
- 5 *Chanda Iddhīpāda*, the urge to do
- 6 *Citta Iddhīpāda*, the active thought
- 7 *Sammā Vācā*, right language
- 8 *Sammā Kammanta*, right action
- 9 *Sammā Ājīva*, right livelihood.

(b) *Vīriya* (energy) has been considered nine times  
[viz , *Sammappadhāna* 4+*Vīriya Iddhīpāda* 1+*Vīriya Indriya*  
1+*Vīriya Bala* 1+*Vīriya Bojjhanga* 1+*Sammā Vāyāma* 1=9]

(c) '*Sati* (mindfulness) has been considered eight times (viz , *Satīpatthāna* 4+*Sati Indriya* 1+*Sati Bala* 1+*Sati Bojjhanga* 1+*Sammā Sati* 1=8]

(d) '*Samādhi* (concentration) has been considered four times (viz , *Samādhi Indriya* 1+*Samādhi Bala* 1+*Samādhi Bojjhanga* 1+*Sammā Samādhi* 1=4]

(e) '*Paññā* (reason) has been considered five times  
[viz , *Vimamsā Iddhīpāda* 1+*Paññā Indriya* 1+*Paññā Bala*  
1+*Dhamma-vicaya* 1+*Sammā Ditthi* 1=5]

(f) '*Saddhā* (faith) has been considered twice [viz ,  
*Saddhā Indriya* 1+*Saddhā Bala* 1=2]' (XXXIV)

---

XXXIV *Sankappapassaddhī ca pitupekkhā,*  
*Chando ca cittaṃ viratittayam ca,*

The above can be verified with the help of the following table —

(I)	<i>Satipatthāna—Kāya-Vedana-Citta-Dhammānupassanā</i>	4
(II)	<i>Sammapphadhāna—Uppannānam pāpakānam dhammānam etc ,</i>	4
(III)	<i>Iddhipāda—Chanda, Viriya, Citta, Vimamsā</i>	4
(IV)	<i>Indriya—Saddhā, Viriya, Sati, Samādhi, Paññā</i>	5
(V)	<i>Bala—Saddhā, Viriya, Sati, Samādhi, Paññā</i>	
(VI)	<i>Bojjhanga—Sati, Dhamma-vicaya, Viriya, Pīti, Passaddhi, Samādhi, Upekkhā</i>	7
(VII)	<i>Magganga—Sammā-Ditthi, Sankappa, Vācā, Kammanā, Ājiva, Vāyāma, Sati, Samādhi</i>	8
		<hr/> 37

‘All the above qualities enumerated under this head are found in the types of the Supra-mundane consciousness, but, at times, *Sankappa* (i.e., *Vitakka*) and *Pīti* may or may not be present [i.e., there is no *Sankappa* = *Vitakka* in the types of Supra-mundane consciousness associated with a stage of *Jhāna* higher than the first,

Navakaṭṭhānā viriyam navatṭha  
Sati, samādhi etu paṇa paññā,  
Siddhā duṭṭhānuttamasatītiṃsa,  
Dhammānāmeso pavaro vibhāgo

and there is no *Pīti* in them associated with a *Jhāna* higher than the third ]

‘In the types of mundane consciousness, they are found, as the occasions permit, in the course of practising the sixfold Purity ’ (XXXV)

(D)

### §5 Of the miscellaneous ones

#### (a) *Khandha* (the Aggregates)

‘A being is a composite of these five aggregates or *Khandhas* —

- (1) ‘*Rūpa*, the aggregate of the material qualities
- (2) ‘*Vedanā*, the aggregate of the different kinds of feeling
- (3) ‘*Saññā*, the aggregate of perceptions
- (4) ‘*Sankhāra*, the aggregate of the fifty mental tendencies [the *Cetasikas* except *Vedanā* and *Saññā* which have been treated as independent *Khandhas*]
- (5) ‘*Viññāna*, the aggregate of the types of consciousness ’ (XXXVI)

The aggregate of all the material qualities is called *Rūpa*, and the remaining four aggregates of mental states are together called *Nāma*. A ‘being’ consists of only *Rūpa* and *Nāma* there does not exist a ‘soul or the ‘spiritual self’ beyond these

---

XXXV Sabbe lokuttare honti na vā sankappa-pītiyo,  
Lokiye pi yathāyogam chabbisuddhippavattiyam

XXXVI Sabbasangahe pañcakkhandhā—rūpakkhandho, vedanākkhandho, saññākkhandho, sankhārakkhandho, viññānakkhandho

It is upon the basis of these five aggregates that one gets the ignorance of 'Incess' or 'Myness' They are, therefore, called *Upādāna-Khandha* or the Aggregates as the objects of Grasping'

(b) *Upādāna Khanda*

*The aggregates as objects of grasping*

'As in (a) (XXXVII)

(c) *Āyatana*

*(The fields on which consciousness arises)*

The six doors, viz , eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind, and their respective objects, viz , form, sound, smell, taste, touch, and ideas, these twelve, are called the *Āyatanas* or the fields on which consciousness arises

'They are

(1) Eye, (2) Ear, (3) Nose, (4) Tongue, (5) Body, (6) Mind, (7) Form, (8) Sound, (9) Smell, (10) Taste, (11) Touch, (12) Ideas' (XXXVIII)

(d) *Dhātu (the elementaries)*

'These are the eight or *Dhātus* or elementaries —

(1) eye, (2) ear, (3) nose, (4) tongue, (5) body, (6) mind, (7) form, (8) sound, (9) smell, (10) taste,

XXXVII Pñcupīlānakkhandhā—rūpupādānakkhandho, vedupādānakkhandho, sannupādānakkhandho, sankhārūpādānakkhandho, vimupādānakkhandho

XXXVIII Dvāyātanāni—cakkhīyatanaṃ, sotāyatanaṃ, ghāṇāyatanaṃ, jivhāyatanaṃ, kīyāyatanaṃ, manāyatanaṃ, rūpāyatanaṃ, sūdhāyatanaṃ, gandhāyatanaṃ, rasāyatanaṃ, phoṭṭhabbāyatanaṃ, dharmāyatanaṃ



'*Manāyatana* (=the sphere of mind) consists of the seven elements of cognition [viz, (1) eye-consciousness, (2) ear-consciousness, (3) nose-consciousness, (4) tongue-consciousness, (5) body-consciousness, (6) *Manodhātu*, the simple cognition, and (7) *Manoviññāna-Dhātu*, the reflective cognition' (XLI)

## SUMMARY

'The above terms have been described under five heads, as follows —

(i) 'The five Aggregates, (1) *Rūpa*, (2) *Vedanā*, (3) *Saññā*, (4) *Sankhāra*, and (5) *Viññāna*

(ii) 'The five aggregates as objects of grasping *Nibbāna* is not composite, it can not be, therefore, included among the *Ahandhas* belonging to the three planes [*Kāma*, *Rūpa* and *Arūpa*]

(iii) 'The twelve *Āyatanā*s, with consideration to the doors and their respective objects

(iv) 'The eighteen *Dhātus* taking into account the doors, their respective objects, and the consciousness arising thereby

(v) 'The four Noble Truths, namely, (1) misery, the cycle of birth and death in the three planes, (2) the

XLI. *Idha pīva cetasika-sukhumarūpa nibbāna-vasena ckūna-sattatū dhammā dhammāvatīnam, dhammadhatū ti ca sankham-gacchanti Manāyatana-meva sattaviññānadhātuvasena bhijjati*

origin, *Tanhā* or desire, (3) the cessation of misery, *Nibbāna*, and (4) the 'eight-fold Noble Path' (XLII-XLIII)

- 
- XLII Rūpam ca vedanā saññā sesā cetasikā tathā,  
 Viññānamut pañcete pañcakkhandhā tī bhāsītā  
 Pañcupādānakkhandhā tī tathā tebhūmakā matā,  
 Bhedābhāvena nibbānam khandhasangahanissaṭṭam  
 Dvārālambanabhedena bhavantāyatnāni ca,  
 Dvārālambanataduppanna-pariyāyena dhātuyo
- XLIII Dukkham tebhūmakam vaṭṭam tanhā samudayo bhava,  
 Nirodho nāma nibbānam maggo lokuttaro mato  
 Maggayuttā phalā ceva catusaccavinissatā,  
 Iti pañcappabhedena pavutto sabbasangaho

CHAPTER VIII  
PACCAYA SANGAHA  
[The philosophy of relation]  
SECTION I  
PACCAYA SAMUPPĀDA

(The law of this arising depending on that')

§1 *Introductory*

'Now we are going to discuss how a state of thing stands in relation with the other in the phenomenal world' (I)

'Relation has been considered in two ways namely —

(1) '*Paccaya-samuppāda-Naya*, the relation which is governed by the law of 'this arises depending on that'

(2) '*Patthāna Naya*, the system of relation between the states of things

'The repeated teacher [Buddhist] hosts in the *Vissuddhi Magga*] has mixed these two in one' (II-III)

§2 *Paccaya Samuppāda*

We have seen above that the man is a composite of

I Yesam' ukk'atthamman'upav'edhammā paccayā yuthā,

I am visible manhood upav'edhammā yutharūham

II Paccaya-paccayo, puthamunayo ceti paccayasangaho diviṭṭho vedh'attho

III I tathā' t'abbh'ay'abhiy'āy'ā'kū' m'attho d'akkhito paccaya-samuppād'ayo Puthamunayo pama āh'ucc'a-pacc'ay'attho m'ā'abbha pavuccatu' t'abb'ay'up'ama vomissitu' p'upane'nti Acun'yā

mental and physical aggregates that are in a state of continuous flux, and also how he is born, and what becomes of him after his death

Now we are going to examine the same in the light of the law of *Patīccasamuppāda*

By ignorance the being fails to view the true impermanent and substanceless nature of existence. He relishes the things of the world, taking them to be real and lasting and creates a craving for them. Due to his cravings, he grasps to attain one and avoid the other. This leads to the continuity of his life-process, a chain of struggle for living. His cravings and grasping do not end with the destruction of his physical frame, but they keep the struggle on in another birth.

His good and bad activities (= *Sākhāra*) of one life determine the type of his birth, his mental disposition, and all his resultant consciousness (*Vipāka*) in the next (i.e., his *Viññāna*). This gives rise to the mental and the physical states (*Nāma-Rūpa*) in his new life according to its own nature. Depending on these he gets the six *Āyatana*, namely, eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind (*Salāyatana*). Depending on the six *Āyatana* he gets a contact (*Phassa*) with the object of cognition. Contact arouses feeling (*Vedanā*). Feeling gives rise to craving (*Tanhā*), and that to grasping (*Upādāna*), which keeps on the process of life (*Bhava*). Grasping does not cease with the death of the being, but it flows on in the next birth (= *ĵāti*). So, he starts a new life again. He becomes

old, dies, gets all kinds of grief, lamentation, pain, anxiety and trouble (= *Jarā-Marana-Soka-Parideva-Dukkha-Domanassupāyāsā*)

Thus he moves on and on in the cycle of birth and death as long as he is in the bondage of ignorance (= *Avijjā*)

The Arhat has uprooted his ignorance completely and finally. Therefore, his activities, which are always good, do not yield *Vipāka*. They are without attachment, i.e., *Kiriyā* or inoperative. When there is no *Vipāka*, his process of life will cease to continue after death. When there is no life after death, no mental and physical states (*Nāma-Rūpa*) will arise. Then there will be no *Salāyatana*, then no *Phassa*, then no *Vedanā*, then no *Tanhā*, then no *Upādāna*, then no *Bhava*, then no *Jāṭh*, and then no *Jarā-Marana-Soka-Parideva-Dukkha-Domanassupāyāsā*. This is *Nibbāna*, the cessation of all evils.

'This is *Paṭiccasamuppāda*, the law of 'this arises depending on that' —

'Depending on ignorance (= *Avijjā*) there arise the activities of life (= *sankhāra*)

Depending on the activities [that yield *Vipāka*] there arises *Paṭisandhi*-consciousness (= *Viññāna*) [in another birth after the expiry of this life]

Depending on *Paṭisandhi*-consciousness there arise the mental and the physical states of the being (= *Nāma-Rūpa*)

'Depending on the mental and the physical states there arise the six *Āyatana*, namely, eye, ear, nose, tongue, body and mind (= *Salāyatana*)

‘Depending on the six *Āyatana* there arises contact (= *phassa*) with the object

‘Depending on contact there arise the different kinds of feeling (= *Vedanā*)

‘Depending on feeling there arises a craving for the object (= *Tanhā*)

‘Depending on craving there arises a grasping (= *Upādāna*)

‘Depending on grasping there arises the process of life (= *Bhava*)

‘The process of life flows on into another birth (= *jāti*) after death

‘Birth is followed by decay, death, grief, lamentation, ill, anxiety and all kinds of trouble (= *jarā-Marana-Soka-Parideva-Dukkha-Domanassa-Upāyāsa*)

‘Thus does originate the whole body of evils ’ (IV)

### §3 *Patīccasamuppāda* reviewed

The law of *Patīccasamuppāda* explains —

(a) That there was a previous life of the being in which, due to ignorance (*Avijjā*), he did all kinds of good and bad actions (*Sankhāra*)

---

IV Tattha avijjāpaccayā sankhārā Sankhāra-paccayā viññānam Viññāna-paccayā nāmarūpam Nāmarūpa-paccayā salāyatanaṃ, Salāyatana-paccayā phasso Phassa-paccayā vedanā Vedanā-paccayā tanhā Tanhā-paccayā upādānam Upādāna-paccayā bhavo Bhava-paccayā jāti Jātipaccayā jarāmarana-soka-parideva-dukkha—domanassupāyāsā sambhavanti Evametassa kevalassa dukkhakkhandhassa samudayo hoti ti Ayamettha paṭicca-samup-pādanayo

This is called *Alīta Kamma-Bhava*, the process of active life in his previous birth

(b) Due to the *Vipāka* of this he gets *Paṭisandhi* in the present birth (*Viññāna*), which gives rise to mind and body (*Nāma-Rūpa*) upon the basis of which there develop the six *Āyatana*, which cause a contact with the object (*Phassa*), as a result of which the subject feels that he has been affected by the object (*Vedanā*)

This much is the process of his present life *as the result of his previous Karma* called *Paccupphanna Upapatti-Bhava*, the process at the time of taking birth

Then due to the feeling he gets craving (*Tanhā*) and grasping (*Upādāna*), and keeps on the struggle of life, doing all kinds of good and bad actions (*Bhava*)

This is the active part of his present life called *Paccupphanna Kamma-Bhava*, the process of his activities in the course of his present span of life

These yield *Vipāka*, and

(c) he gets *Paṭisandhi* in some other life according to it (*Ĵāti*) which is again followed by decay, death and all evils (*Ĵarā Marana* etc)

This is the future resultant of the present called *Anāgata Upapatti-Bhava*, the process of life in the future as a result of the present

Thus there are twelve constituents in the law of *Paticcasamuppāda*, namely, (1) *Avijjā* (ignorance) (2) *San-khāra* (good and bad activities), (3) *Viññāna* (*Paṭisandhi*-

consciousness in the next birth), (4) *Nāmarūpa* (mental and physical states arising at the time of *Paṭisandhi*), (5) *Salāyatana* (development of eye, ear, nose, tongue, body and mind in the course of life), (6) *Phassa* (contact), (7) *Vedanā* (feeling), (8) *Tanhā* (craving), (9) *Upādāna* (grasping), (10) *Bhava* (the life-process = the struggle of life), (11) *Ĵāti* (birth after death), (12) *Ĵarā-Marana* etc., (the evils following the birth)

Thus the law of *Patīccasamuppāda* takes into consideration four sections from the previous, the present, and the future lives, namely —

(a) *Alīta Kamma-Bhava*, the active part of the previous life represented by the first two constituents, viz., *Avijjā* and *Sankhāra*. In reality, these two include the middle three active constituents as well, viz., *Tanhā*, *Upādāna*, and *Bhava*.

(b) *Paccupphanna Vipāka-Bhava* or the present resultant of the previous Karma, comprising the five constituents, namely, *Viññāna*, *Nāmarūpa*, *Salāyatana*, *Phassa* and *Vedanā*.

(c) *Paccupphanna Kamma-Bhava*, the present active life that will yield resultant in the coming birth, represented by the three constituents, namely, *Tanhā*, *Upādāna* and *Bhava*. But, in reality, they include the other two active constituents as well, viz., *Avijjā* and *Sankhāra*.

(d) *Anāgata Vipāka-Bhava*, the resultant of the present Karma in the coming birth, represented by the



last two constituents, viz , *Jāṇi* and *Jarāmarana* etc , which really mean all the five resultant constituents, namely, *Viññāna*, *Nāmarūpa*, *Salāyatana*, *Phassa* and *Vedanā*

These four sections—one of the previous, two of the present, and one of the future—are called the four *Sankhepa*, each consisting of five constituents

There are three junctions (*Sandhi*) in the process of these four sections, namely

(1) that of the previous activity with the present resultant,

(2) that of the present resultant with the present activity,

(3) that of the present activity with the future resultant

The twenty constituents coming under the four sections are called the twenty *Ākāras* or modes

The above may be studied with the following diagram —

The constituents of <i>Patuccasamupphāda</i>	The three successive lives	The four sections and twenty modes	The three junc- tions
1 Ignorance ( <i>Avijjā</i> ) 2 Good and bad activities ( <i>Sankhara</i> )	Past	I <i>Alīta K a m m a Bhava</i> 1 <i>Avijjā</i> 2 <i>Tanha</i> 3 <i>Upādāna</i> 4 <i>Bhava</i> 5 <i>Sankhāra</i>	
3 <i>Paṭisandhu</i> -consciousness ( <i>Viññāna</i> ) 4 Mind and body ( <i>Nāma-Rūpa</i> ) 5 The six <i>Āyatanas</i> 6 Contact ( <i>Phassa</i> ) 7 Feeling ( <i>Vedanā</i> )	Present	II <i>Paccuppanna Vipāka Bhava</i> 6 <i>Viññāna</i> 7 <i>Nāmarūpa</i> 8 <i>Salāyatana</i> 9 <i>Phassa</i> 10 <i>Vedanā</i>	I
8 Craving ( <i>Tanhā</i> ) 9 Grasping ( <i>Upādāna</i> ) 10 The process of life ( <i>Bhava</i> )		III <i>Paccuppanna Kamma Bhava</i> The same as I	II
11 Birth in the coming life ( <i>Jāti</i> ) 12 Decay, death and all evils ( <i>Jarāmarana</i> etc.)	Future	IV <i>Anāgata Vipāka Bhava</i> The same as II	III

'In the law of *Pattecasamupphāda* the following should be understood — (1) the three successive lives (*Addhā*), (2) the twelve constituents (*Anga*), (3) the twenty modes (*Ākāra*), (4) the three junctions (*Sandhu*), (5) the four sections (*Sanlhepa*), (6) the three rounds (*Vatta*) and (7) the two roots (*Mūla*)' (V)

'How so ?

'*Avijjā* and *Sankhāra* belong to the Past, *Jāti* and *Jarāmarana* etc to the Future, and the eight constituents in the middle to the Present These are the three successive births' (VI)

'*Avijjā* (ignorance), *Sankhāra* (good and bad activities), *Viññāna* (*Paṭisandhi*-consciousness), *Nāma-Rūpa* (mind and matter), *Salāyatana* (the six bases), *Phassa* (contact), *Vedanā* (feeling), *Tanhā* (craving), *Upādāna* (grasping), *Bhava* (the process of life), *Jāti* (birth in the coming life) and *Jarāmarana* (decay and death), these twelve, are the constituents of the law of *Pattecasamupphāda* *Soka* (grief) and others are nothing but the evils that come out of it' (VII)

'The first two constituents, *Avijjā* and *Sankhāra*, include the other three active constituents as well, namely, *Tanhā*, *Upādāna* and *Bhava* Similarly, *Tanhā*, *Upādāna*

V Tattha tayo addhā, dvādasangāni, viṣatākārā, asandhi, catuṣṣankhepi, tīni viṭṭāni, dve mūlāni ca vedittabbāni

VI Kūṭham ? Avijjā-sankhārā attito addhā jāti-jarāmaranananāgato addhā Majjhe attha paṭcuppanno addhā ti tayo addhā

VII Avijjā, sankhārā, viññānam, nāmarūpam, salāyatanaṃ, phasso, vedanā tanhā, upādānam, bhavo, jāti, jarāmarananan ti dvādasangāni Sokaḍivacanam pañettha nissandaphalanidassanam.

and *Bhava* include *Avijā* and *Sankhāra* as well. The last two constituents, *Jāti* and *Jārāmarana*, really mean the five resultant constituents, namely, *Viññāna*, *Nāmarūpa*, *Salāyatana*, *Phassa* and *Vedanā*. Thus there are five active constituents of the previous life which yield the five resultant constituents of the present. And there are five active constituents of the present life which yield the five resultant constituents of the coming one.

‘Thus there are twenty modes (*Ākāra*), three junctions (*Sandhi*), and four sections (*Sankhepa*) (VIII)

These are the three circles one moving the other —

(1) *Kilesa-Vatta* or the circle of defilement, consisting of *Avijā*, *Tanhā* and *Upādāna*

(2) *Kamma-Vatta* or the circle of Karma, consisting of the active part in the process of life (*Kamma-Bhava*), together with all the kinds of good and bad activities (*Sankhāra*)

(3) *Vipāka Vatta* or the circle of *Vipāka*, consisting of the resultant part in the process of life

The other constituents, *Avijjā* and *Tanhā*, are the two roots

VIII Avijjāsankhārāggahanena panettha tanhūpādāna-bhavā pi gahitā bhavanti. Tathā tanhūpādāna-bhavāggahanena ca avijjā-sankhārā jātyarā-marāna-ggahanena ca viññānādīphala-pañcakam-eva gahitanti katvā

Atte hetavo pañca, idāni phalapañcakam,

Idāni hetavo pañca, āyatim phala-pañcakanti

Visatākārā, tsandhi catusankhepā ca bhavanti

IX Avijjā-tanhūpādānā ca kilesavattam, kamma-bhavasankhāto bhavēkadeso sankhārā ca kamma-vattam, upapattibhavasankhāto bhavēkadeso avasesā ca vipākavattam ti tīni vattāni Avijjā-tanhāvasena dve mulāni ca vedittabbāni

‘It is only through putting a stop to these two roots that the round of birth and death can be ended

‘*Avijjā* grows with the growth of the *Āsavas*. This leads the being to roam from life to life in the three planes of existence, constantly tortured by decay, death and all kinds of evils

‘This is the law of *Pattecasamupphāda* taught by the Great Sage’ (X)

- 
- X Tesamcva ca mūlānam nirodhena nirujjhati  
 Jarāmaranamucchāva pīlitānamabhūhaso,  
 Āsavān im samupphidā avijjā ca pavattati  
 Viṣṭamābhinidhimiccevaṃ tebhūmakamanādikam,  
 Pattecasamuppādo ti paṭthapesi mahāmuni

## SECTION II

## PATTHĀNA-NAYA

[The system of co-relation]

## §4 Introductory

*Paccaya-Dhamma* is a state of thing that assists in the arising of another called the *Paccayuppanna-Dhamma* or that which has come to exist conditioned by the former. The relation between these two is called a *Paccaya* which is named after the nature of the *Paccaya-Dhamma*.

For example, an *Ārammana* (=object of cognition) is a *Paccaya-Dhamma* in relation to the consciousness and psychic factors arising on it which will be termed as *Paccayuppanna Dhamma* in relation to the former. And the relation between the two will be called *Ārammana-Paccaya*, because the *Paccaya-Dhamma* in this case is functioning as the *Ārammana* (=object) of the *Paccayuppanna*.

Thus if the devotee gets a type of moral consciousness at the sight of the image of the Buddha it may be said, "*Buddha-rūpam upāsakassa kusala-cittassa ārammana-paccayena paccayo hoti*" i.e., the image of the Buddha (*Paccaya-Dhamma*) is related to the moral type of consciousness of the devotee (*Paccayuppanna-Dhamma*) by the relation of *Ārammana-Paccaya* (functioning as an 'object').

According to *Patthāna* there are altogether twenty-four kinds of such relation named after their respective *Paccaya-Dhamma*.

They are —

### 1 *Hetu-paccaya*

The word *Hetu* is here used in the sense of 'root'. As the root supports and sustains the tree so the *Paccaya-Dhamma* in this relation does to the *Paccayupphanna*.

The *Paccaya-Dhammas* in this relation are six, namely, *Lobha*, *Dosa*, *Moha*, *Alobha*, *Adosa* and *Amoha*, and the *Paccayupphanna-Dhammas* are all the types of consciousness and psychic factors associated with them, as well as the groups of material qualities\* that co exist with the same

### 2 *Ārammana-paccaya*

(The object-subject relation)

*Ārammana* means the 'object' of cognition. *Ārammana-Paccaya* is, therefore, a kind of relation in which the *Paccaya-Dhamma* is an 'object' of the *Paccayupphanna*, which must necessarily be a type of consciousness or a psychic factor.

All the types of consciousness, all the psychic factors, all kinds of material qualities, *Nibbāna*, and all the concepts may come as the *Paccaya-Dhamma* in this relation. In other words, these may be the objects of our cognition.

There is, in fact, not a single thing which does not become an *Ārammana* of consciousness and the psychic

---

\* The material qualities produced by Karma at the moment of a *Sahetuka Paṭivandhu*-consciousness, as well as such material qualities as may be produced by a type of *Sahetuka*-consciousness during the course of life.

factors Thus it may be of six kinds, namely, visible *Ārammana*, audible *Ārammana*, odorous *Ārammana*, sapid *Ārammana*, tangible *Ārammana*, and cognisable *Ārammana*

### 3 *Adhipati-Paccaya*

(*The relation of one dominating the other*)

*Adhipati-Paccaya* is a relation in which the *Paccaya-Dhamma* exercises a dominating influence over the *Paccayupphanna* There are two kinds of this relation, namely, (a) *Ārammanādhipati-Paccaya* and (b) *Sahajātādhipati-Paccaya*

#### (a) *Ārammanādhipati-Paccaya*

It is a kind of relation in which the *Paccaya-Dhamma* exercises a dominating influence over the *Paccayupphanna*, being an *Ārammana* (object) of it which is a type of consciousness or psychic factor

Only such objects can be the *Paccaya-Dhamma* in this relation which are most lovable and most regardable

The two types of consciousness accompanied by *Dosa*, the two accompanied by *Moha*, the touch consciousness accompanied by pain, and the concomitants of all these cannot possibly come as the *Paccaya-Dhamma* in this relation, inasmuch as they cannot be most lovable and most regardable

With the exception of these, the remaining types of consciousness, together with all their respective concomitants, may be the *Paccaya-Dhamma*, only if they are most lovable and most regardable



Ledi Sayadaw illustrates it by the story of Sutasoma Jātaka —

In the Sutasoma Jātaka, the king Porisāda, owing to his extreme delight in human flesh, abandoned his kingdom solely for the sake of it, and lived a wanderer's life in the forest. Here, the savour of human flesh is the *Paccaya Dhamma* of *Ārammanādhupati* relation, and, king Porisāda's consciousness rooted in appetite (*Lobha*) is the *Paccayuppanna-Dhamma*.

And again, Sutasoma, having a very high regard for Truth, forsook his sovereignty, all his royal family, and even his life, for the sake of Truth and went to throw himself into the hands of Porisada. In this case, 'Truth' is the *Paccaya-Dhamma*, and Sutasoma's moral consciousness is the *Paccayuppanna-Dhamma*.

(b) *Sahajātiādhupati-Paccaya*

It is a kind of relation in which the *Paccaya-Dhamma* exercises a dominating influence over the *Paccayuppanna*, being a concomitant (*Sahajāta*) of it, which may be consciousness, psychic factors, or the material qualities produced by the dominant thoughts.

The concomitants that come as *Paccaya Dhammas* in this relation are four, namely, (1) *Chanda* or an urge to do, (2) *Citta* or the active thought, (3) *Viriya* or energy, (4) *Vimansā* or the will to investigate, because they exercise dominating influence over the consciousness, psychic factors, and the material qualities with which they are associated.

The following states of thing are together related by way of this relation —

- (1) The same as in 6 and 7
- (2) The six organs (eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, heart), to the six kinds of consciousness (eye-consciousness, ear-consciousness etc )

### 9 *Upamissaya-Paccaya*

(*The relation of sufficing condition*)

This is a relation in which the *Paccaya-Dhamma* is a sufficing condition for the presence of the *Paccayuppanna*. It is of three kinds, namely, (1) *Ārammanūpanissaya*, (2) *Anantarūpanissaya* and (3) *Pakatūpanissaya*. Of these, the first is the same as *Ārammanādhīpatī-Paccaya* [3], and the second as *Anantara Paccaya* [4]

*Pakatūpanissaya-Paccaya* is the relation in which the *Paccaya-Dhamma* is a natural sufficing condition of the *Paccayuppanna*, which is a type of present consciousness and its psychic factors

All past, present and future, internal and external classes of consciousness together with their psychic factors, all material qualities, *Nibbāna*, and concepts (*Paññatti*) are natural sufficing condition, severally related, as the case may be, to all the present classes of consciousness and their concomitants

### 10. *Purejāta-Paccaya*

(*The relation of Pre-existence*)

The six organs, as well as the five sensible objects related to the corresponding kinds of consciousness

(eye-consciousness, ear-consciousness etc.), by way of this relation. In other words, eye-consciousness etc. cannot arise without the pre-arising or pre-appearance of the organs and the sensible objects. At the moment of *Patibandha*, however, the mind-consciousness arises together with the heart-organ.

11 *Pacchā-Jāta-Paccaya*  
(The relation of Post-existence)

In this relation the *Paccaya-Dhamma* is consciousness and its psychic factors that arise only posterior to the arising of the *Paccayupphanna-Dhamma*, the body of the being.

Here, the *Paccaya-Dhamma* assists in the arising of the *Paccayupphanna*, being posterior to it, just as the rain-water that falls every subsequent year assists in the growth of such vegetation as has grown up in previous years.

12 *Āsevana-Paccaya*

In this relation the *Paccaya-Dhamma* is such, the constant repetition of which adds to the strength and proficiency of the *Paccayupphanna*, just as a student understands and remembers a passage better the more he reads it.

This relation exists between one <sup>at-moment</sup> and the other in the forty-seven <sup>lines</sup> *Javana*-consciousness (viz., immoral 1 *haggata* 9 + *Kiriyā* 18 = 47). In these, each moment adds to the strength and proficiency,

succeeding ones which are together related by way of this relation

### 13 *Kamma-Paccaya*

(*The relation between the Karma and its effect*)

In this relation the *Paccaya-Dhamma* is *Cetanā* or volition, which guides and regulates the action, and the *Paccayuppanna-Dhammas* are consciousness, its psychic factors, and the material qualities generated by the *Kamma* and the mind

### 14 *Vipāka-Paccaya*

In this relation the *Paccaya-Dhammas* are the thirty-six types of resultant-consciousness and their psychic factors, and the *Paccayuppanna-Dhammas* are the same, when they are mutually related, as well as the material qualities generated by Karma and mind, as it is said "The four mental groups, in so far as they are karma-result or *Vipāka*, are one to another a condition by way of karma-result"

### 15 *Āhāra-Paccaya*

(*The relation between food and its effect*)

In this relation the *Paccaya-Dhamma* is the four kinds of nutriments, namely, (1) material food, (2) contact (*Phassa*), (3) volition (*Mano-Saṅcetanā*) and (4) consciousness (*Ti*), which nourish the *Paccayuppanna-Dhammas*, all the states of mind and body, so that they are able to endure long, to develop, to flourish, to live.

16 *Indriya-Paccaya**(The relation of the guiding faculties)*

This relation is of three different kinds, namely, co-existence, pre-existence, and physical-life

Of these—the *Paccaya-Dhammas* of the first kind are the fifteen co-existent faculties, viz, psychic life, consciousness, pleasure, pain, delight, antipathy, indifference, faith, energy, mindfulness, concentration, reason, the feeling that I shall realise what is not yet realised, partial realisation, and the final realisation. And the *Paccayuppanna-Dhammas* are their co-existent properties, both mental and material

The *Paccaya-Dhammas* of the second kind are the five sentient organs, viz, eye, ear, nose, tongue, and body. And, the *Paccayuppanna-Dhammas* are the five senses together with their concomitants

The *Paccaya-Dhamma* of the third kind is only one viz, 'physical-life' itself. And the *Paccayuppanna-Dhammas* are all the material qualities produced by karma, with the exception of physical life itself

17 *Jhāna Paccaya**(The relation of Jhāna)*

*Jhāna* is here to be understood in its widest sense, not necessarily that of the *Rūpāvacara* ~~vacara~~ and *Lokuttara*

The *Paccaya-Dhammas* in this relation, constituents of *Jhāna*, namely—*Vitakkā*, *Somanassa*, *Domanassa*, *Upekkhā* and *Ekaggatā*

And, the *Paccayuppanna-Dhammas* are all the types of consciousness, with the exception of twice fivefold *Viññāna*, their concomitants, and the material qualities in co-existence with the seven constituents.

18 *Magga Paccaya*  
(*The relation of Path*)

The word *Magga* means a 'Path'. If it is followed in the right direction it leads to *Nibbāna*, and to the realm of misery, if followed in the wrong direction.

The twelve constituents of the Path are the *Paccaya-Dhammas* in this relation. And the *Paccayuppanna-Dhammas* are all the types of consciousness, and mental concomitants conditioned by the *Hetu*, and all material qualities co-existing with the types of *Sahetuku*-consciousness.

19. *Samprayutta-Paccaya*  
(*The relation of Association*)

All the types of consciousness are related with their respective psychic factors by way of this relation.

20 *Viprayutta-Paccaya*  
(*The relation of dissociation*)

In this relation, the *Paccaya Dhamma* is such as is dissociated from the *Paccayuppanna*. Thus the mental factors are related to the material by way of this relation. (The six original *Paccaya*, *Natthi-Paccaya*, *Natthi-Paccaya Vigata-Paccaya*, *Avigata-Paccaya*)

*Atthi-Paccaya* is the same as *Avigata-Paccaya*, and *Natthi-Paccaya* the same as *Vigata-Paccaya*

The first is a relation in which the *Paccaya-Dhamma* exists with the existence of the *Paccayupphanna*, and the second is a relation in which the *Paccaya-Dhamma* must be absent when the *Paccayupphanna* exists (XI)

### §5 Ways of co-relation

‘Thus there are altogether six ways of co-relation, namely,

A. ‘The states of mind related

- (i) among themselves in six ways,
- (ii) to mind-body (*Nāma-Rūpa*) in five ways, and
- (iii) to matter alone in one way.

B. ‘Matter related

- (iv) to the states of mind in only one way,

C. ‘Concepts and mind-body related

- (v) to the states of mind in two ways

D. ‘Mind-body related

- (vi) to mind-body in nine ways’ (XII)

XI Hetu-paccayo, ārammana-paccayo, adhipati-paccayo, ananta-paccayo, samanantari-paccayo, saha-jāta-paccayo, añña-mañña-paccayo, nissaya-paccayo, upanissaya-paccayo, purejāta-paccayo, parichijāt-paccayo, āsevanā-paccayo, kamma-paccayo, vipāk-paccayo, āhāra-paccayo, indriya-paccayo, jhāna-paccayo, magga-paccayo, sampratyutta-paccayo, vi-  
paccayo, natthi-paccayo, vigata-paccayo, at-

Ayamettā piṭṭhānāni

XII Chaddhā nāmaṃ tu nāmassa, Eka-

Ekadha puni rūpassa rūpam nāmassa cet-

Pannatti-nāma-rūpāni nāmassa duvidhā dv-

Dvayassa navadhā ceti chabbidhā paccayā kat-

## I

‘The states of mind are related among themselves in the following six ways —

Consciousness and its psychic factors that have just ceased are related to consciousness and its psychic factors that are present

(1) by way of *Anantara-Paccaya* or the preceding-succeeding relation,

(2) by way of *Samanantara-Paccaya* [which is just the same as above],

(3) by way of *Natthu-Paccaya* [22] for, it is only when the *Paccaya-Dhamma* has ceased that the *Paccayupphanna* arises, and

(4) by way of *Vigata-Paccaya*, [which is just the same as above]

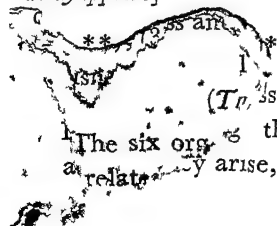
\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

(6) The preceding moments of *Javana* consciousness are related to the succeeding moments of it by way of *Āsevana-Paccaya* [as, each repetition of the *Paccaya-Dhamma* in this case adds to the strength and proficiency of the *Paccayupphanna*]



\*\*

\*\*

(7) The six organs and their concomitant psychic factors are related to themselves by way of *Sampayutta-Paccaya* [as, the six organs arise, exist and cease simultaneously on the same object]



the same object and the same organ] (XIII)

## II

'The states of mind are related to mind-body (*Nāma-Rūpa*) in the following five ways —

(1) The *Hetus* are related to mind-body by way of *Hetu-Paccaya*

(2) The constituents of *Jhāna* are related to mind-body by way of *Jhāna-Paccaya*

(3) The constituents of the Path are related to mind-body by way of *Magga-Paccaya*

(4) Co-existent volition (*Sahajātā Cetanā*) is related to mind-body, and the asynchronous volition (*Nānākhamikā Cetanā*)\* only to the mind-body that have arisen due to previous karma, by way of *Kamma-Paccaya*

(5) The types of the resultant consciousness are related among themselves, and also to their co-existing material qualities by way of *Vipāka-Paccaya* (XIV)

## III

'The states of mind are related to matter only in one way—

XIII Anantara niruddhā citta-cetasikā dhammā paccupannānam citta cetisikānam dhammānam anantara-samanantara-natthivigatavasena, purimāni javanāni pacchimānam javanānam āsevanavasena, sahajātā cittacetisikā dhammā aññamaññam sampayuttavasene ti ca chiddhā nāma nāma paccayo hoti

\*Ninikhi mikā Cetanā is that which differs from the others in its effects. That is to say, the time when the effects of one take place is another time.

XIV Hetu-jhāna-maggāni sahetu-jhāna-sahajātāni khamikā cetanā kammābhinihitaṇaṃ nāma Vipākakkhandhā aññamaññam, sahajātāni kavasevati ca pañcādhī nāma nāmarūpānam paccaya,

Consciousness and its psychic factors, that have arisen after the arising of the body, are related to it by way of *Paccā-jāta-Paccaya* or the relation of post-existence. (XV)

## IV

‘Matter is related to the states of mind only in one way, —

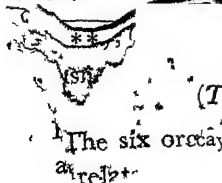
‘The six organs (eye, ear, nose, tongue, touch and heart) are related to the seven-fold consciousness, and the five sensible objects (form, sound, smell, taste and touch) to the courses of five-door cognition, by way of *Purejāta-Paccaya* or the relation of pre-existence [because the organs and the objects must exist prior to the arising of consciousness]’ (XVI)

## V

‘Concepts and mind-body are related to the states of mind in the following two ways —

(1) ‘By way of *Ārammana Paccaya* or the object subject relation [because all concepts, all the states of mind, and all the material qualities are the objects of cognition]

(2) ‘By way of *Upanissaya-Paccaya* or the relation of sufficing condition [because they may be the sufficing conditions of the arising of a certain consciousness and its psychic factors]



‘*betasikā dhammā purejātassa imassa kāyas-  
dhā va nāma rūpassa paccayo hoti*  
(*T*) *pavattiyam sattannam viññānadhātunam,  
añjavīññānavithiyā purejātavaseneti ekadhā va*

The six organs hoti

241-12+

'Here the objects may be of six kinds, namely, form, sound, smell, taste, touch and ideas' (XVII)

'*Upamissaya* or sufficing condition is of three kinds, namely,

(1) '*Ārammanūpanissaya* or object being the sufficing condition

(2) '*Anantarūpanissaya* or contiguity being the sufficing condition

(3) '*Pakatūpanissaya* or the natural sufficing condition' (XVIII)

'Of these, only the object to which weight is attached is the *Ārammanūpanissaya*. States of consciousness and their psychic factors which have just ceased constitute the *Anantarūpanissaya* or the sufficing condition in contiguity. *Pakatūpanissaya* or the sufficing condition in nature is of many kinds, for instance, such tendencies as passion and others, faith and others, pleasure, pain, a person, food, weather, residence, pertaining either to the person or existing outside, either moral, immoral or non-moral, action, or resultant and so on' (XIX)

XVII Ārammanavasena upamissayavasenetī dvidhā paññattināma-rūpūni n unasseva paccayā honti Taitha rūpādivasena chabbidhami hoti ārammanam

XVIII Upamissayo pana tividho hoti ārammanūpanissaya anantarūpanissayo, pakatūpanissayo ceti

XIX Ittha arammanameva garukat. anantarāniruddhā cittacetasikā dhammā a dayo pana dhamma, saddhādayo ca, sukhar, bhojanam, utu senāsranam ca yathāraham ajja kusalādi dhammānam, kammam vipākānam ti pakatūpanissayo

## VI

‘Mind-body are related to mind-body in the following nine ways — (1) *Adhīpati*, (2) *Sahajāta*, (3) *Aññamaññā*, (4) *Nissaya*, (5) *Āhāra*, (6) *Indriya*, (7) *Vip̐payutta*, (8) *Atthi* and (9) *Avigata*’ (XX)

(1) *Adhīpati-Paccaya*

1 ‘*Adhīpati-Paccaya*, in two ways, as follows —

*a* The object to which weight is attached is related to the states of mind by way of *Ārammānādhipati*.

*b* ‘The four kinds of co-existent dominant influences (*Chanda*, *Citta*, *Vīrya*, *Vīmaṃsā*) are related to the co-existent states of mind and body by way of *Sahajātādhipati*’ (XXI)

(2) *Sahajāta-Paccaya*

‘*Sahajāta Paccaya* in three ways, as follows—

*a* ‘Consciousness and its psychic factors are related amongst themselves, and also to the co-existing bodily states by way of this relation

*b* ‘The four essential qualities of Matter (*Mahābhūta*) are also related amongst themselves, and also to the *Upādā-Rūpa* & conditioned qualities by way of this relation

*c* ‘At the moment of *Paṭisandhi*, the seat of conscious-

jāta-aññamaññā-nissayāhārindriya vip̐payutta-  
athāraham navadhā nāmarupāni nāma-  
vanti  
ukata-mārammanam ārammanādhipatīvasena  
adhīpati catubbidho pi sahajātavaseṇa sahajātānam  
ca duvidho hoti adhīpati-paccayo

ness (heart-base) and the aggregate of *Vipāka*-consciousness are together related by way of this relation (XXII)

(3) *Aññamañña-Paccaya*

‘*Aññamañña-Paccaya*, in three ways, as follows—

*a* ‘Consciousness and its psychic factors are related amongst themselves by way of this relation

*b* ‘The four Essential Qualities of matter are also related amongst themselves by way of the same relation

*c* ‘At the moment of *Patisandhi*, the seat of consciousness (heart-base) and the *Vipāka-Citta* are together related by way of this relation’ (XXIII)

(4) *Nissaya-Paccaya*

‘*Nissaya-Paccaya*, in three ways, as follows —

*a* ‘Consciousness and its psychic factors are related amongst themselves, and also to the co-existing material qualities by way of this relation

2 ‘The four Essential Qualities are related amongst themselves, and also to the secondary qualities (*Upādā-Rūpa*) by way of the same relation

3 ‘The six organs are related to the seven-fold consciousness by way of the same relation’ (XXIV)

---

XXII Cittacetāsikā dhammā aññamaññaṃ saha-jātarūpanam ca, mahābhūtā aññamaññaṃ upādārūpanaṃ pātisaṃdhiyā vatthuyupākā aññamaññaṃ ti ca tividho hoti aññamañña-paccayo.

XXIII Citta-cetasikā dhammā aññamaññaṃ pātisaṃdhiyā vatthu-vatthuyupākā aññamañña-paccayo.

XXIV Citta-cetasikā dhammā aññamaññaṃ saha-jātarūpanam ca, Mahābhūtā aññamaññaṃ upādārūpanam, sattanāṃ viññāna-dhātūnam ti ca tividho hoti.

(5) *Āhāra-Paccaya*

'*Āhāra-Paccaya*, in two ways, as follows —

1. Edible food is related to this body, and

2 the psychic nutriments (i e, *Phassa*, *Manosañcetanā* and *Viññāna*) to the co-existing states of mind and the matter conditioned by them by way of this relation' (XXV)

(6) *Indriya-Paccaya*

'*Indriya-Paccaya*, in three ways, as follows —


a 'The five sensitive qualities (eye, ear, nose, tongue, touch) are related to their respective consciousness,

b the Physical-life to the self-earned material qualities and

c the psychic faculties to the co-existing states of mind and matter conditioned by these by way of this relation' (XXVI)

(7) *Vip̐payutta-Paccaya*

*Vip̐payutta-Paccaya* (the relation of dissociation) in three ways, as follows —

a '*Sahajāta-Vip̐payutta* or a relation in which the *Paccaya-Dhamma* exists simultaneously with the *Paccayup̐panna*, but is quite distinct from it. The heart-base is related to the sa-  


jāt  
 āhlāro m̐assa kāyassa, arūpino āhārā saha-  
 va ti ca duvidho hoti āhāra-paccayo  
 āsādā pañcannam viññānānam, rūpa-jvītan-  
 āpānam, arūpino indriyā saha-jātānam nāmarū-  
 vidho hoti indriyapaccayo

and its psychic factors to the co-arising mutual qualities by way of this relation

*b* 'Pacchājāta-Vip̣payutta on a relation in which the Paccaya Dhamma arises after the arising of the Paccayup̣panna, and remains distinct from it. Consciousness and its psychic factors that have arisen after the arising of the body are related to it by way of this relation

*c* 'Purejāta-Vip̣payutta on a relation in which the Paccaya-Dhamma arises before the arising of the Paccayup̣panna, and remains distinct from it. The sex organs are related to the sevenfold consciousness by way of this relation' (XXVII)

(8-9) *Atthi paccaya*

'In *Atthi-Paccaya* (the relation of presence) and *Avigata-Paccaya* [which is just the same], the Paccaya-Dhamma may be —

- (1) *Sahajāta*=arising together with the Paccayup̣panna,
- (2) *Purejāta*=arising prior to it,
- (3) *Pacchājāta*=arising posterior to it,
- (4) *Kabalikāra*=edible food, or
- (5) *Rūpa-jīva*=physical-life' (XXVIII)

XXVII Okkantikkane vatthu vipākānam saha-jātarūpānam saha-jātavasena, pacchājātā purejātassa imassa kāyassa pacchājātavasena tiyam sattannam viññāna-dhātūnam purejā, hoti vip̣payuttapaccayo

XXVIII Sahajātam purejātam pacchājātam ca Kabalikāro āhāro rūpajīvitamiccayam u Pañca-vidho hoti atthi-paccayo avigata-paccayo ca

## SUMMARY

'All the twenty-four kinds of *Paccaya Dhammas* can be brought under the following four —

- (1) *Ārammana* (object)
- (2) *Upamissaya* (sufficing condition)
- (3) *Kamma*
- (4) *Atthi* (presence)' (XXIX)

'The term 'Co-arising matter' has been used above in two meanings. It should be understood to mean, in the life-process, that which has been generated by mind, and at the moment of *Patisandhi*, that which has sprung up due to previous actions (XXX)

'All the states of thing, those that are comprehended in the terms of tenses, and also those that cannot be bounded by time-limit, those that belong to the person of a being, and also those that exist external to him, those that are conditioned, and also that which is unconditioned, can be brought under the following three heads, (1) Concepts (*Paññatti*), (2) *Nāma* (states of the Mind, and *Nibbāna*) and (3) matter (*Rūpa*), which include all the twenty-four kinds of *Paccaya-Dhamma* described in the *Patthāna*' (XXVI)

Jātanissaya-kammattipaccayesu ca sabbe pi  
atīṣṭha gacchanti  
vīpam ti panettha sabbathā pi pavatte cittasa-  
sandhiyam kaṭattārūpanam ca vasena duvidham  
iti tekālikā dhammā kālamuttā ca sambhavā,  
Ajjhataṃ ca bahiddhā ca anikhatāsankhatā tathā



## §6 Reality, concept and term

‘Matter (*Rūpa*) means the whole aggregate of material qualities

‘The term *Nāma* includes the four psychic aggregates [*Vedanā*, *Saññā*, *Sankhāra* and *Viññāna*] and *Nibbāna*. It is also called by the name of *Arūpa* or non-matter

*Paññatti* is either the concept’ that is comprehended or the ‘term’ that expresses it’ (XXXII)

‘How? From the metaphysical point of view, such things have no real existence as—land, mountain, river etc, which are nothing but the different modes of the essential qualities of matter, house, chariot cart etc, which are known to be such depending upon the various parts of which they are made, persons and beings, who are the composite of the Five Aggregates, time and space, which are generally conceived in relation to the movement of the moon, the sun etc, and well, cave etc, which are nothing but different kinds of gap, the image of the *Kasina* in the practice of meditation and others

‘Even then, we cognise them as objects signifying some meaning for our practical purpose. They are taken as that, referred as that, known as that, called that, an

Paññatti-nāma-rūpānam vasena ti  
Paccayā nāma patthānc catuvisati

XXXII Tattha rūpadhammā rūpakkhandhi  
sankhātā cattāro arūpino khandhā, nibbānaṃ  
arūpaṃ ti ca nāmaṃ ti ca pavuccati Tato avasesa  
paññāpiyattā paññatti, paññapanato paññatti ti ca du

conceived as that This is *Paññatti* or concept, because it is conceived' (XXXIII)

'*Paññatti* as 'term' is one which serves as a symbol to express a thing It is of six kinds, namely —

(1) '*Vijjamāna Paññatti* or a 'term' which is expressive of a thing that is truly real [i.e., anyone out of the 72 entities that have metaphysical real existence]

(2) '*Avijjamāna-Paññatti* or a 'term' which is expressive of a thing that is not a true reality, [but is either totally imaginary or a concept]

(3) '*Vijjamānena Avijjamāna Paññatti* or a compound term of which the first factor is a true reality, but not the second one

(4) '*Avijjamānena Vijjamāna-Paññatti* or a compound term of which the first factor is not a true reality, but the second one is

(5) '*Vijjamānena Vijjamānapaññatti* or a 'compound term' of which both the factors are expressive of true realities

---

XXXIII Katham ? Tam-tam-bhūta-viparināmākāramupādāya tathā tathā paññattā bhūmipabbatādikā, sambhāra-sannivesākāramupādāya gehā, kaṭṭhādikā, khandhapañcakamupādāya purisapug-  
~~gādikā~~ nādikamupādāya disākālādikā, asamphu-  
jātva-gubhādikā, tam-tam-bhūtanimittam bhāvanā-  
atītasīsanamitādikā ceti evamādiṭṭhābhedaṃ pana  
va-jānāpi atthacchāyākārena cittuppadānamāni am-  
asāram upādāya upanidhāya kāraṇam katvā tathā  
vijjamānā sankhāyati samaññāyati vohariyati paññā-  
vāṇattīti pavuccati Ayam paññatti paññāpiyattā paññatti



'Cakkhu-Viññāna = eye consciousness

Here both the factors have real existence

'Rāja-Putta = the king's son Here both the factors are non real They are concepts, both being composites of the Five Aggregates

### §7 How is the meaning understood ?

'When a word is said to us, there arise courses of cognition of the ear-consciousness on each unit of sound, which are followed by the arising of representative cognition of the same through the mind door. Thus, the meaning of one unit of sound is linked with the other, and at the end of the word, we get its meaning, as is conventionally taken. This is known as *Paññatti* '

(XXXVI)

XXXV Tattha yadā pana paramatthato vijjamānam rūpa--vedanā--  
dim etāya paññāpentī, tadāyam vijjamāna-paññattī Yādā pana  
paramatthato avijjamānam bhūmipabbatādim etāya paññāpentī,  
tadāyam avijjamāna-paññattī ti pavuccatī Ubhannam panā vomis-  
sā-kamam chalabhiñño, itthisaddo, cakkhu-viñ-  
ñāna-jātā veditabbā  
jātā anusārena sota-viññāna-vithiyā,  
athā antaruppannamanodvārassa gocarā,  
assānusārena viññāyanti tato param,  
paññattī viññeyyā lokasanketanimmittā

## CHAPTER IX KAMMATTHĀNA

(*Objects for the practice of meditation*)

### SECTION I

#### SAMATHA-KAMMATTHĀNA

(*The objects of mundane Jhānā*)

##### §1 *Introductory*

Sensual passion (*Kāmacchanda*), ill-will (*Vyāpāda*), sloth and torpor (*Thīna-Middha*), distraction and worry (*Uddhacca-Kukkucca*) and perplexity (*Vicikicchā*), these five, are called *Nīvaraṇa* or the hindrances to the attainment of *Jhāna* and insight. Under their influence, it is not possible to concentrate upon anything or to fully realise the impermanent, miserable and substanceless nature of all existence.

The exercises of meditation that lead to the **suppression** of these hindrances—which is possible only in a state of the *Rūpa* or the *Arūpa Jhāna*—are called *Samatha-Bhāvanā* or the practice of the Calm and the objects suitable for the practice of such meditation are called *Samatha-Kammatthāna*.

The Yogāvacara succeeds in **destroying** these hindrances—which, the Supra-mundane (*Lokuttara*)—by rea-

the true nature of all existence. The exercises of meditation meant for the purpose of such realisation are called *Vipassanā Bhāvanā* or the practice of the insight, and the objects suitable for their practice are called *Vipassanā-Kammatthāna*.

‘Hereafter, we are going to discuss about the objects suitable for the practice of *Jhāna* and that of ‘insight’ (I)

‘To understand all about *Samatha-Bhāvanā* or the Practice of Calm, one should know the following —

(A) ‘The seven kinds of object for meditation, namely—

- 1 The ten circles (*Kasina*)
- 2 The ten stages of a dead body (*Asubha*)
- 3 The ten objects for reflection (*Anussati*)
- 4 The four illimitables (*Aṭṭhamaññā*)
- 5 The ‘idea’ of the unpleasantness of material food (*Saññā*)

6 Contemplating over the four essential elements of which our body is composed (*Vavatthāna*)

7 The four formless objects (*Arūpa*)

(B) ‘Persons of primarily six different temperaments, namely—

Pe have got a strong feeling of attach-  
 jāt  
 atthā  
 vā  
 nānam bhāvanānamito param,  
 iam pavakkhāmi duvidham pi yathākkamam

- 2 Persons who have got a strong feeling of antipathy (*Dosa-Carita*)
- 3 Dull persons (*Moha Carita*)
- 4 Persons of a believing nature (*Saddhā-Carita*)
- 5 Persons of a rationalistic nature (*Buddhi-Carita*)
- 6 Persons of an imaginative nature (*Vitakka-Carita*)

(C) 'The three stages in the practice of meditation, namely—

- 1 The preliminary (*Parikamma*)
- 2 The accessory (*Upacāra*)
- 3 The ecstatic (*Appanā*)

(D) 'The three symbols (*Nimitta*), namely—

- 1 The objective (*Parikamma*)
- 2 The image (*Uggaha*)
- 3 The transformed after-image (*Patibhāga*)' (II-V)

Now follows a detailed exposition of the above

## A

### §2 *The objects of meditation*

I 'The ten hypnotic circles (*Kasīna*) are those that are made with—(i) clay, (ii) water, (iii) fire, (iv) air,

---

II-V Tattha samatha-sangahe tāva, dasa kammaṇṇaṃ dasa asubhāṇaṃ  
 dasa anussatiyo, catasso appamāṇāyā, ekā saṅkappaṇā, catubhāṇaṃ  
 caritāro āruppā ceti satṭaviḍheṇa samatho Rāgacarito, dosa carito, moha-carito, saddhā  
 vitakka carito ceti chabbidheṇa caritasangaho upacārā-bhāvanā, appanā bhāvanā ceti tisso bhāvanā  
 nimittam, uggaha-nimittam, patibhāga-nimittāṇe veditabbāni

(v-viii) blue, yellow, red or white colour, (ix) a gap or hole, and (x) light' (III)

A full description of how these circles are to be prepared has been given by Acharya Buddha-ghosa in his famous work 'the Visuddhi Magga'

2 'The ten stages of a dead body are—(i) bloated (ii) discoloured, (iii) festering (iv) one with cracked skin, (v) being eaten up (by vultures, jackals and other animals) (vi) cut in pieces, (vii) mutilated and scattered in fragments, (viii) bloody, (ix) worm-infested and (x) skeleton \* (VII)

3 'The ten objects for reflection are—(i) greatness of the Buddha, (ii) greatness of the Doctrine, (iii) greatness of the Order, (iv) the merits of Sila, (v) the merits of benevolence, (vi) the greatness of the gods, (vii) the greatness of peaceful calm, (viii) death, (ix) the unclean things in our body, and (x) respiration'† (VIII)

4 'The four illimitables are—(i) friendliness, (ii) compassion, (iii) joy and (iv) equanimity They are called 'illimitables' because they are extended over the infinite

---

VI Pathavi-kasīnam, āpo-kasīnam, tejo-kasīnam, vāyo-kasīnam, nīla-kasīnam, pīta-kasīnam, lohita-kasīnam, odāta-kasīnam, ākāsa kasīnam, ālokakasiṇaṇīceti imāni dasa kasīnāni nāma

VII Uddhumāṭṭakam, vinīlakam, vipubbakam, vicchiddakam, vikkhāyitaṭṭakam, hata-vikkhittakam, lohitaṭṭakam, puluvaṭṭakam, āsa asubbhā nāma

jāṇī, Chapter VI

ātthi, Chapters VII-VIII

vijjā, dhammānussati, saṅghānussati, sīlānussati, ājīvānussati, upasānānussati, maraṇānussati, kāyagata-sati ceti imā dasa anussatiyo nāma



creatures of the universe They are also called *Brahma-Vihāra* or the Divine, meditation '‡ (IX)

5 The idea of the unpleasantness of material food, called *Saññā* ' (VII)

6 Contemplating over the four Essential qualities of which our body is composed, called *Vavatthāna* ' (VIII)

7 'The four objects of meditation, free from the idea of form—(i) infinite space, (ii) infinite consciousness, (iii) nothingness and (iv) a state of the subtlest perception' (IX)

'Thus, there are altogether forty objects suitable for the practice of *Jhāna* ' (X)

### B

'The above different objects of meditation (*Kammat-thāna*) are particularly suited for persons of different temperaments in the following manner—

(a) The ten stages of a dead body (*Asubha*), and the unclean things in our body (*Kāyagatā Sati*)—for a person of a strong feeling of attachment (*Rāga Carīta*)

(b) 'The four illimitables (*Appamaññā*), and the circles of blue, yellow, red and white colours—for a person having a strong feeling of antipathy (*Dosa Carīta*)

(c) Respiration (*Ānāpāna*)—for a dull or an imaginative person

See Visuddhimagga, Chapter IX

IX Mettā, karuṇā, muditā, uppekkhā  
ñāyo, nāma, Lohamavahārā ti pi vuccanti

X Āhāre patikkūlasaññā ekā saññā nīti a  
Catudhātuvavatthānam ekam vavatthāna,

(d) 'Reflecting over the greatness of the Buddha, Doctrine and the Order, the merits of Sila, and benevolence, and the greatness of the gods—for the person of a believing nature (*Saddhā-Carita*)

(e) 'Reflection over death, the greatness of peaceful calm, the idea of the unpleasantness of material food, and contemplation over the four essential qualities of which our body is composed—for a person of rationalistic nature (*Buddhi Carita*)

'The remaining objects [earth, water, fire, air, gap or hole, light, and the four formless] are all suitable for every one

‘In accepting a circle (*Kasina*) for practice, a wide one is suitable for a dull person, and a little one for a Person of imaginative nature’ (XI)

## C

### §3 *The stages of meditation*

*Appanā* (ecstasy) is the highest stage in the practice of meditation, in which the mind is fully concentrated on the *Kammattthāna*, all the 'hindrances' (*Nivarana*) being thoroughly suppressed, and the constituents of *Jhāna*—i.e.,

XI Ākāśānancāyatanādayo cattāro āruppā nāmū ti sabbathā  
 samathamiddaṃ bhāvaṃ kammūṭṭhanāni bhavanti  
 ākāśa asubhā, kāya-gatū-satusankhātī koṭṭhā-  
 jāni āppāyā Catasso appamāññāyo, nilidini ca  
 ākāśa, ānāpānaṃ mohacariṭṭassa, vitikkacari-  
 ṭṭāyo cha saddhācariṭṭassa, mānānupamaṃ sa-  
 mīcariṭṭassa Sesāni pāna sabbhāni pi kammaṭ-  
 tāni āppāyāni, Tathāpi kasinsu puthulāni mohacari-  
 ṭṭāni vitakkacariṭṭasvā ti

*Vitakka*, *Vicāra*, *Pīṭh*, *Sukha* and *Ekaggata*—having taken their rise in full strength

*Upacāra* is the stage lower than the above, in which, just like the *Appanā*, the mind is fully concentrated on the *Kammatthāna*, and all the ‘hindrances’ have also been thoroughly suppressed, but the constituents of *Jhāna* have not attained to maturity

*Parikamma* is the stage of a beginner, in which he tries his best to grasp the *Kammatthāna*

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

Now let us consider what stages of meditation are possible with what *Kammatthāna*

‘*Parikamma*, being the most primary stage, is possible with all the *Kammatthāna*

‘*Upacāra* is possible with the following ten *Kammatthānas*, [but not *Appanā*]—

- (i)—(viii) the first eight objects for reflection,
- (ix) the idea of the unpleasantness of material food,
- and (x) contemplating over the four essential qualities of which our body is composed

‘*Appanā* is possible only with the remaining thirty *Kammatthāna* [viz, 10 *Kasina* + 10 *Asu<sup>h</sup>ka* + 2 *Anussati* + 4 *Appamañña* + 4 *Arūpa* = 30] (XIII)

XIII Bhāvanāsu pana sabbatthāpi pa  
bhateva Buddhānussati ādisu aṭṭhasu, saññāva  
kammatthānesu upacāra-bhāvanā va sampajja  
Sesesu pana samatimsakammatthānesu appanābhāva



his practice in accordance to his temperament as said above, and, if possible, also in consultation with a teacher. He draws his thoughts from all sides and tries to concentrate on the object technically called *Parikamma Nimitta* or the objective symbol.

He looks at the *Parikamma Nimitta* with even eyes, and pays full attention to it. When he is very much engrossed with the object, an 'image' of it appears before him, even when he keeps his eyes shut. This is the first attainment in the process of meditation. The 'image'—having all the details of the object—is technically called *Uggaha Nimitta* or the imagery symbol.

The Yogāvacara feels very much composed, and finds great pleasure in meditating upon the *Uggaha Nimitta*. After a continued practice on it, the details of the 'image' vanish away, and it becomes a disc of clear brilliance. 'It is like a mirror taken out from its covering or like the moon just emerged from the clouds.'\* It is called *Patibhāga Nimitta* or the transformed after image.

This is the other important mile-stone in the way of Yoga. But it should be noted that the arising of *Patibhāga Nimitta* is possible only with twenty-two *Kammaṭṭhānas*, namely, the ten *Kāyaṇas* and *Asubhā*, *Kāyagatāsati* and *Ānāpāna*, not with

---

\* *Paṭibhāgaṇimittam* thavikato nihaṭṭadāsa-  
valāhakanārā nikkhantacandamandalam viya  
IV 31

*Parikkamma* and *Uggahanimitta* are possible in some way or the other with all the *Kammattthāna*

In a case where there arises a *Patibhāga Nimitta*, the *Upacāra* stage of meditation becomes very strong in which all the *Nīvaranas* are suppressed. Then the five constituents of *Jhānā*—i.e., *Vitakka*, *Vicāra*, *Pīti*, *Sukha* and *Ekaggata*—appear in prominence, and the first *Jhāna* is obtained which is the *Ārpanā* stage of meditation.

Now it is not wise to try to rise higher in the stage of *Jhāna* without making that sufficiently mature and steady what has been already attained. One stage must be mastered perfectly before attempting for the next.

These are the five ways in which mastery should be attained—

(i) He should be able to attend to the *Jhāna* wherever and whenever he desires. This is called *Āvajjanā Vasī* or mastery over attending to it.

(ii) He should be able to enter into the *Jhāna* wherever and whenever he desires. This is called *Samāpajjanā Vasī* or mastery over entering into it.

(iii) He should be able to maintain the *jhāna* whenever, wherever and as long as he desires. This is called *Adhitthāna Vasī* or mastery over maintaining it.

He should be able to get up from the *Jhāna* wherever he desires. This is called *Uṣāgata Vasī* or mastery over getting up from it.

He should be able to retrospect over the *Jhāna* *kam*.

whenever, wherever, and as long as he desires. This is called *Paccavekkhanā Vasī* or mastery over retrospecting the same.

'*Parikamma-Nimitta* and *Uggaha-Nimitta* are possible, in some way or the other, with all the *Kammatthānas*, but *Patibhāga-Nimitta* is possible with twenty-two

In these cases, the accessory (*Upacarā*), as well as the ecstatic (*Appanā*) stages are obtained on the *Patibhāga Nimitta*.

'The process is as follows —The object which a beginner places before himself to meditate upon is called *Parikamma Nimitta* or the objective symbol, and the first stage of meditation is called *Parikamma* or preliminary.

'When the *Yogāvacara* is very much engrossed with the object, he begins to see an exact image of it, even when he shuts his eyes. This 'image' is called *Uggaha Nimitta* or the imagery symbol. At this stage the *Yogi* obtains concentration of the mind.

'Then, with this preliminary concentration, he continues to meditate upon the *Uggaha Nimitta*. After a course of this practice, the details of the 'image' vanish away, and it appears as a disk of all together transformed nature, a creation of the mind. This *Nimitta* or the transformed after image of meditation on it is very strong.

'Then, meditating upon it with this concern

mind, he attains to the first stage of *Jhāna* belonging to the *Rūpāvacara*

‘Then, by constant practice, he gains mastery over the *Jhāna* in the five ways, namely, *Āvajjanā*, *Samāpajjanā*, *Adhittānā*, *Vutthānā* and *Paccavekkhanā*

‘Then, by eliminating the constituents of *Jhāna* one by one, he attains to the higher and higher stages of it’  
(XV-XIX)

‘Thus, *Paṭibhāga Nimitta* is possible only with the twenty-two *Kammatthāna* as described above

Among the rest, the illimitables (*Appamaññā*) have, as their objects, the idea of beings’ (XX)

XV-XIX Nimittesu pana parikammanimittam, uggahanimittam sabbathāpi yathāraham pariyāyena labbhanteva Paṭibhāganimittam pana kasināsubha-koṭṭhāsānāpānesvāva labbhanti Tattha hi paṭibhāganimittamārabbhā upacārasmādhī, appaṇāsāsmādhī ca pavattanti Kathaṃ? Adikammikassa hi paṭhavimandalādisu nimittam uggahanantassa tamārammanam parikammanimittanti pavuccati Sā ca bhāvanā parikammabhāvanā nāma Yādā pana tannimittam cūtena samuggahitam hoti, cakkhunā passantasseva manodvārassa āpāthamāgatam, tadā tameva ārammanam uggahanimittam nāma Sā ca bhāvanā samādhīyati Tathā samāhūtassa panetassa tato param tasmim uggahanimutte parikammasamādhinā bhāvanamanuyuñjantassa yadā tappatibhagam vatthudhammavimuccitam paññattisankhātam bhāvanāmayamālambanam citte sannissinnam samappitam hoti Tadā paṭibhāganimittam samuppannanti pavuccati Tato paṭṭhāya paṭibandhavippahinā kāmāvacarasamādhisankhātā upacārabhāvanā nippahantā nāma hoti Tato param tameva paṭibhāganimittam upacārasamādhinā samāsevantassa rūpāvacarapaṭhamaj-jānamapannā param tameva paṭhamajjhānam, āvajjanā samāpajjanā vutthānā paccavekkhanā ceti imāhi pañcalu katvā vitakkādīkamolārikangam pahānāya, vattiyā padahato yathākkamam dutyayjjhāppenti paṭhavikasinādisu dvāvisati-kammaṭṭhānesu amupajabbhati Avasesesu pana appamaññā satta-pavattanti



## §5 The process of meditation in the

*Arūpāvacara Jhāna*

To rise up from the *Rūpāvacara Jhāna* to the *Arūpāvacara*, the *Yogāvacara* has first of all to get the *Patibhāga Nimitta*, meditating on any of the first nine *Kisinas*, and attain the fifth stage of *Jhāna* on it. Then, he develops the *Nimitta* on and on mentally so as to cover the whole universe, and reaches it even up to infinity.

Then, mentally he removes it away and finds only empty space pervading all over "just as when the lid of a pot is removed." He meditates on this Infinity of Space and obtains *Jhāna* on it. This is the first stage of *Arūpa Jhāna* called *Ākāśānaññāyatana* or *Jhāna-consciousness dwelling on the infinity of Space*.

Then, for Infinity of Space he substitutes Infinity of Consciousness, meditates on it, and obtains *Jhāna*. This is the second stage of *Arūpa Jhāna* called *Viññānaññāyatana* or *Jhāna-consciousness dwelling on the Infinity of Consciousness*.

Then, he removes away the Infinity of Consciousness also and feels that nothing is there. He attains *Jhāna* on nothingness, which is the third stage of the *Arūpa Jhāna* called *Ākiñcaññāyatana* or the *Jhāna-consciousness dwelling on nothingness*.

Then, he meditates that this nothingness is calm and blissful, and obtains *Jhāna* on it. This is the fourth stage of *Arūpa Jhāna* called *Neva Saññā Nāśanāyatana*.

the *Jhāna*-consciousness wherein cognition is so extremely subtle that it cannot be said whether it is or is not

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

\*\*

‘After having attained the fifth stage of *Jhāna* the *Yogāvacara* mentally removes away the *Patibhaga Nimitta* of any of the first nine *Kasinas*, developed up to infinity, and finds only empty Space at its place. He meditates upon this Infinity of Space, and obtains *Jhāna* on it. This is the first stage of *Arūpa Jhāna*.

‘He, then, substitutes Consciousness for Space, meditates on it and obtains the second stage of the *Arūpa Jhāna*.

‘Then, he removes ‘consciousness’ also and meditates that there is nothing (absence of consciousness) and thus obtains the third stage of the *Arūpa Jhāna*.

‘Then, he meditates upon the above as being calm and blissful, and thus obtains the fourth stage of the *Arūpa Jhāna*’ (XXI)

#### §6 About the *Kammatthāna* with which *Appanā*

is not possible

‘One can obtain the concentration of *Parikkamma* and *Upacāra* by meditating on any of the remaining ten *Kammatthāna* in right manner [viz, 8 *Anussati* + 1

---

XXI Ākāsaṃvāṇīkāsinesu pana yam kiñci kasinamugghāteivā laddhamākāsam • anantavasena parikkammam karontassa paṭhamāruppamappeti Tameva paṭhamāruppaviññānam anantavasena parikkammam karontassa duttiyāruppamappeti Tameva paṭhamāruppaviññānabhāvam pana natthi kiñci ti parikkammam karontassa tatiyāruppamappeti Tatiyāruppam santametam panītametanti parikkammam ontassa catutthāruppamappeti

*Saññā*+1 *Vavatthāna*], with which *Appanā* is not possible ' (XXII)

### §7 Performance of miracles

At this stage, the Yogāvacara is able to perform many miracles, such as those of *telepathy*, *television*, *knowing the thoughts of others*, *remembering one's past births*, *framing astral bodies*, and others. These are called *Abhiññā*. There is a full description of these in the *Sāmaññaphala Sutta*, *Dīgha Nikāya*.

The process how they are performed is as follows —

The Yogāvacara obtains the fifth stage of the *Rūpāvacara Jhāna* on any *Kammatthāna*. Then, getting up from the *Jhāna*, makes all suggestions necessary for the particular *Abhiññā*. He then again obtains *Jhāna* on it and performs the *Abhiññā*.

Here, the *Jhāna* that he has to obtain before making the suggestions is called *Pādaka Pañcama Jhāna* or the fifth stage of *Jhāna* which serves as the foundation for the *Abhiññā* and the *Jhāna* at the time of the performance of the miracle is called *Abhiññā Jhāna*.

‘To perform a certain *Abhiññā*, the Yogāvacara gets up from the *Pādakapañcama Jhāna*, a fifth stage of the *Rūpāvacara Jhāna*, makes all suggestions necessary for the performance, and obtains *Jhāna* on it

---

XXII Avasesesu ca dasasu kammatthānesu buddhagunādīkamā lambanamārabhha parikammam katvā tasmim nimitte sādhu kamya gahite tattheva parikammam ca samādhīyati, upacāro ca sampar

‘There are five kinds of *Abhiññā*, namely,

1 *Iddhi*-powers, such as flaming astral bodies and others

2 Celestial ear

3 Knowing the thoughts of others

4 Remembering one’s previous births

5 Celestial vision ’ (XXIII-XXIV)

---

XXIII-XXIV *Abhiññā*vasena pavattamānam pana rūpāvacara-  
 pañcamajjānam *abhiññāpāda*kapañcamajjhānā vuttahitva  
 adhiṭṭheyyādika<sup>1</sup>māva<sup>2</sup>jetvā parikammam karontassa rūpādisu ālam-  
 bānesu yathārahamappeti

<sup>1</sup> *Abhiññā* ca nāma—

<sup>2</sup> *iddhi*vidham *dibbasota*m paracittavi<sup>3</sup>jānanā,  
 Pubbenivāsānussati *dibbacakkhū* ti pañcadhā

## SECTION II

### VIPASSANĀ KAMMTTHĀNA

(*The objects of 'insight'*)

#### §8 *Introductory*

'One should know the following in connection with the practice of 'insight'

(A) The sevenfold Purity, namely,

- 1 Purification of character (*Sīla-Vissuddhi*)
- 2 Purification of consciousness (*Citta-Vissuddhi*)
- 3 Purification of views (*Ditthi-vissuddhi*)
- 4 Purification by a complete removal of all doubts (*Kankhāvitaraṇa Vissuddhi*)

5 Purification by discerning what is the right path and what is not (*Maggāmaggaññānadassana-vissuddhi*)

6 Purification of knowledge, by realising the right path (*Paṭipadāññāna-dassana Vissuddhi*)

7 Purification of 'insight' by the realisation of *Nibbāna* (*Ñānadassana Vissuddhi*)

(B) 'The three characteristics of all existence, namely—

- 1 Impermanence (*Anicca*)
- 2 Causing misery (*Dukkha*)
- 3 Being devoid of an ego (*Anatta*)

(C) 'The threefold contemplation, namely—

- 1 Of impermanence (*Aniccānupassanā*)
- 2 Of misery (*Dukkhānupassanā*)
- 3 Of non-ego (*Anattānupassanā*)

(D) 'The ten-fold knowledge of 'insight', namely—

1 That all his impermanent, miserable and devoid of an ego (*Sammasana Ñāna*)

2 That one phase of the existence rises up when the other sinks down (*Udayavyayañāna*)

3 That all is proceeding towards destruction (*Bhanga-Ñāna*)

4 That the world is, therefore, to be dreaded (*Bhaya-Ñāna*)

5 That it is full of evils (*Ādinava-Ñāna*)

6 That there is much disgust in the world (*Nibbidāñāna*)

7 That the world should be renounced (*Muñcitukamyatā-Ñāna*)

8 Full realisation (*Patīṣankhāna-Ñāna*)

9 Equanimity (*Sankhārupekkhā-Ñāna*)

10 The knowledge that leads to *Nibbāna* (*Anuloma Ñāna*)

(E) 'The three-fold Emancipation, namely—

1 By way of being a complete cessation, (*Suññato*)

2 By way of having no differentiating marks (*Animutto*)

3 By way of being totally free from all expectations (*Appamhuto*)

(F) 'The three-fold way for the realisation of emancipation, namely—



§11 *Purification of views*

3 'Purity of views consists in a full understanding of the characteristics, the functions, the manifestations and the immediate cause of both the material and the mental ' (XXXII)

§12 *Purification by removal of doubts*

'A thorough grasp of the states of mind and matter, in their causal relation, is *Kankhāvitaraṇasuddhi* or purity by the removal of doubts ' (XXXIII)

§13 *Purification by discerning what is the right path and what is not*

'After that, the Yogāvacaṃ meditates on the states of mind and matter—that have been grasped in the above manner with their causal relations, that are of the three planes of existence [*Kāma, Rūpa, Arūpa*], and that belong to the past, the present and the future births—in their different groups and classifications, as the five aggregates etc., [See *Navanītatika* p 170] He meditates that they are impermanent being in a state of continuous change, 'miserable' being full of fear, and 'substanceless' being devoid of an ego. He meditates on their threefold characteristics, in the period of time, in their continuity and moments of existence. Thus, meditating upon them in their causal relation in their moments of existence, as

XXXII

Lakkhana-rasa-paccupaṭṭhāna-padaṭṭhānavasena  
arūpapaṅgaho dīṭṭhivisuddhi nāmaXXXIII Tesameva ca nāmarūpānam paccaya paṅgaho kankhā-  
vīṭṭhivisuddhi nāma



rising and passing away, he gets the following —

1 'Obhāsa'—a supernatural light, by which he is able to see most clearly every corner of the universe

2 'Pīti—a strong thrill of pleasant sensation

3 'Passaddhi—composure

4 'Adhimokkha—a strong faith

5 'Paggaho—a great energy

6 Sukha—ease

7 'Nāna—deep insight

8 'Upatthāna—mindfulness of the insight

9 'Upekkhā—equanimity

10 'Nikkanti—a light desire for this state

'One should not be misled by these and take them to be the true 'Path' They are the obstacles in the way of Nibbāna One should wisely discriminate at this stage what is the true 'Path' and what is not This is called, *purity by discriminating what is the true Path and what is not*'

(XXXIV)

---

XXXIV Tato param pana tathāpariggahitesu sappaccayesu tebhūmakasankhāresu autādiḥhedabhinnesu khandhādimayamārabha kalāpavasena sankhupitvā, aniccam khayatthena, dukkham bhayaṭṭhena, anattā asāraṭṭhena ti addhānavasena, santativasena, khaṇavasena vā sammasanañānena lakkhanattayam sammasantassa, tesveva paccayavasena khaṇavasena ca udayabbayañānena udayab-bayam samanupassantassa ca—

Obhāso pīti passaddhi adhimokko ca paggaho,

Sukham nānamupatthānamupekkhā ca nikkanti ceti

Obhāsādivipassanupakkilesaparibandhapariggahavasena  
gāmaggalakkhanavavattānam maggāmaggañānadassanavij-  
nāma

§14 *Purification of knowledge by realising  
the true path*

6 'Having avoided the above obstacles, he meditates on the threefold characteristics, and thus gets the nine knowledges, from *Udayavyayañāna* to *Anulomañāna*. This is called 'Purity of knowledge of the true Path'

(XXXV)

§15 *Course of cognition leading to the attainment of the Supramundane*

After a constant practice of meditation, as described above, the 'insight' of the Yogāvacara becomes sufficiently strong. He meditates on the impermanent, miserable, and non-ego nature of all existence, and obtains *Jhāna* on *Nibbāna*. This is the *Lokuttarabhūmi* or the Supramundane state.

The last course of cognition—belonging to the *Kāmāvacara*—that he has just before entering into this *Jhāna* is very strong and important, as it is in this process that his *Puthujjana* (worldling)-career comes to an end and he becomes an *Arya* or noble one. The first three moments of *Javana* consciousness in this 'course of cognition' are called *Parikamma* (preparation), *Upacāra* (approximation) and *Anuloma* (the one leading to it). This is the climax of 'insight' that leads to the Supra-mundane, and gives

XXXV Tathāparibandhavimuttassa pana tassa udayabbayañāna-  
to paṭṭhāya yāvanulomā tilakkhanam vipassanā paramparāya  
pajantassa nava vipassanā ñānāni patipadāñānadassanavisuddhi-

a grand lift to the Yogāvacara in his Yogic life. The fourth moment of *Javana*-consciousness is called *Gotrabhu* or the one where ends the realm of *Kāmāvacara* and begins that of the *Lokuttara*. It is at this moment that *Nibbāna* becomes the object of consciousness. Yogāvacara gets the Path-consciousness, in which it has been realised that all is miserable, the cause of misery (i.e., *Tanhā*) has been forsaken, the cessation of all misery has been accomplished, and the way leading to the cessation of it has been traversed.

Then, he gets two or three moments of Fruit-consciousness, and sinks down to *Bhavanga*. Then, he reflects over it again and obtains *Jhāna*.

'In the above manner, he accomplishes maturity of 'insight' and is at the verge of obtaining *Appanā*. He reflects over either the impermanent, miserable or substanceless nature of all existence. The 'courses of cognition' that proceed on it are *Manodvāra Vithi*, therefore, after the cessation of *Bhavanga* there arises a thought moment of *Manodvārāvajjana*-consciousness, then, there follow two or three thought moments of 'insight' called by the names of *Parikamma*, *Upacāra* and *Anuolma*. The last one of these is the height of 'insight', leading to the Supra-mundane, giving a grand lift to the Yogi, in which all attachment towards worldly things has ceased. It is followed by a thought-moment called *Gotrabhu*, having *Nibbāna* as its object. It is the point where the *Kāvacara* ends and the *Lokuttara* begins. Just after

there arises the *Jhāna*-consciousness of the Path, in which the first noble truth (*Dukkha*) has been realised, the second (*Samudaya*) has been dropped, the third (*Nirodha*) has been obtained, and the fourth (*Paṭipadā*) has been fulfilled. Then, there arise two or three moments of Fruit-Consciousness (*Phala*) and sink down. Then there begins the flow of *Bhavanga*. Then, he reflects on the same '.

'He must reflect over the Path, Fruit and *Nibbāna*, but he may or may not do so over the *Kilesa* that have been already destroyed.

"The four-fold Path should be practised thus in the above six ways of purity. Path is the purification of knowledge and insight ' (XXXVI)

#### §16 *The modes of Emancipation*

"The contemplation over the *Anatta* (non-ego) nature of all existence removes the false conviction in the exis-

---

XXXVI Tassevam patipajjantassa pana vipassanā paripākamā-gamma idāni appanā uppajjisstī ti bhavangam vocchijjtvā-uppanna-manodvārāvājjanānantaram dve tīni vipassanā-cittāni yam kiñci anic-cādi-lakkhanamārabbha parikkhamopacārānulomanāmena pavattanti. Yā sikkhāpattā sā sānulomā sankhārupekkhā vuṭṭhānagaminī vipassanā tī pavuccatī. Tato param gotrabhūcittam nibbānamālambitvā putthujjanagottamabbhūbhavantam ariyagottamabbhusambhontañca pavattatī. Tassānantarameva ca maggo dukkhasaccam parijānanto, samudayasaccam pajahanto, nirodhasaccam sacchi-karonots, maggasaccam bhāvanāvasena appanāvīṭhumotarati. Tato param dve tīni phalacittāni pavattitvā nirujjanti. Tato Param bhavanga-pāto hoti. Puna bhavangam vocchinditvā paccavekkhanāñānāni pavattanti.

Maggam phalañca nibbānam paccavekkhatī pandito,

Hine kilese sese ca paccavekkhatī vā na vā

Chabbisuddhikkamenevā bhāvetabbo catubbidho,

Ānādasānavissuddhi nāma maggo pavuccati

tence of an ego or soul, it is, therefore, called *Suññatā-nupassanā* or contemplation on non-ego \*

'The contemplation on the *Anicca* (impermanent) nature of all existence removes errors,\* it is, therefore, called *Anmattānupassanā* or contemplation on the non-Identity

'The contemplation over the *Dukkha* (miserable) nature of all existence overcomes all desire and craving, it is, therefore, called *Appanāhītanupassanā* or the contemplation on the total absence of expectation

'All these three modes of contemplation lead to Emancipation The Path-consciousness can be attained by any of them And, the Path will be named after the mode of the third moment of 'insight', which raises the Yogī from the *Kāma-vacara* to the *Lokuttara* If it is a moment of insight into non-ego (*Anatta*), the Path attained after this will be called Emancipation through the contemplation of the non-ego If it is a moment of insight into impermanence (*Anicca*), the Path will be called Emancipation through the contemplation on the non-Identity If it is a moment of insight into 'misery' (*Dukkha*), the Path will be called Emancipation through the Contemplation of the desireless Their corresponding types of Fruit-consciousness (*Phala-Citta*) also

---

\*Vipallāsa-error It is of three kinds, namely (1) *Saññā-vipallāsa* or erroneous perception (2) *Citta-vipallāsa* or erroneous ideas, and, (3) *Diṭṭhi-vipallāsa* or erroneous views, by which people regard impermanent things as permanent (*Anicce niccantī*)

receive the same names. The object and properties of all the three are identical' (XXXVII—XXXVIII)

§17 *Persons at the four stages of the Supra-mundane*

'One who has cultivated the consciousness of the Path of Stream-attainment (*Sotāpattimagga-Citta*), by destroying the first two fetters, namely, *Diṭṭhi* (false view) and *Vicikicchā* (doubt), is called a *Sotāpanna*. He can not possibly be born in the realm of misery, and is sure to become an Arhat within seven births.

'He cultivates the consciousness of the Path of once returning (*Sakgādāgāmmagga-Citta*), by further slackening the bondage of *Rāga* (attachment), *Dosa* (hatred) and *Moha* (dullness and deception), and becomes a *Sakadāgāmi*. He takes only one more birth after this, in which he is sure to become an Arhat, and freed from this world.

'He cultivates the consciousness of the Path of Never-returning (*Anāgāmmagga Citta*), by further completely destroying the fetters of *Kāmarāga* (lust) and *Vyāpāda*

---

XXXVII-XXXVIII Tattha anattānupassanā attābhīnivesam muñcantī suññātanupassanā nāma vimokkhamukham hoti. Aniccānupassanā vipallāsanamittam muñcantī anamittānupassanā nāma vimokkhamukham, dukkhānupassanā tanhāpanidhiṃ muñcantī appanīhitānupassanā nāma vimokkhamukham hoti. Tasmā yadī vuttānāgāmini vipassanā anattato vipassati, suññato vimokkho nāma hoti maggo. Yadi aniccato vipassati anamitto vimokkho nāma. Yadi dukkhato vipassati appanīhito vimokkho nāmā ti ca maggo vipassanāgamanavasena tīni nāmāni labhati. Tathā phalañca maggāgamanābhāvanāvasena maggavithiyam Phalasamāpattivithiyam pana yathāvuttanayena vipassantānam yathāsakam phalamupparijamāvaampi vipassanāgamanavasene va suññatādivimokkhoti ca vuccati lambanavasena pana sarasavasena ca nāmatrayam sabbattha sabbesapi samameva.

(ill-will), and becomes an *Anāgāmi*. He is sure to become an Arhat in this very life, and not be born again.

'He cultivates the consciousness of the Path of Arhathood, by destroying all the remaining fetters, and becomes an Arhat. He becomes pure and most honourable' (XXXIX-XLII)

§18 *Nirodhasamāpatti* (Cessation  
of the mental process)

'The process of the attainment of their own fruition (*Phala-samāpatti*) is common to all. But, the attainment of the Cessation of the mental process (*Nirodha-Samāpatti*) is possible only with the *Anāgāmi* and Arhat.

'He enters into the different stages of *Mahaggata Jhāna* one by one, in due order, contemplating over the impermanent, miserable and non ego nature of their states. Having done so up to *Ākiñcāññāyatana* or the Sphere of nothingness, he prepares himself to enter into the Cessation of mental process by making necessary resolves for his safety and well-being during that state. Then, he obtains the *Jhāna* of *Nevasaññānāsaññā*, the highest stage of the *Mahaggata* plane. Here, only after two

---

XXXIX-XLII Ettha pana sotāpattumaggam bhāvetvā dīṭṭhivī-  
cīkicchāpahānena pahināpāyagamano sattakkhattuparamo sotāpanno  
nāma hoti. Sakadāgāmumaggam bhāvetvā rāgadosa-mohānaṃ  
tanutā sakadāgāmi nāma hoti, sakideva imaṃ lokam āgantā Anāgā-  
mumaggam bhāvetvā kāmarāgavyāpādānaṃ anavaśesappahānena  
anāgāmi nāma hoti, anāgantā itthattaṃ Arahattumaggam bhāvetvā  
anavaśesakilesappahānena arahā nāma hoti, khināsavo loke aggadal-  
khineyyo.

moments of this *Jhāna*-consciousness, his mental process is stopped altogether. This is the stage of *Nirodha-Samāpatti*. When he emerges from this state, he gets a moment of either *Anāgāmi* or *Arahata Phala* consciousness, as the case may be, and then comes the *Bhavanga*. Then follows the retrospection over the same ' (XLI-III-XLV)

---

XI-III-XI-V Phalasamāpattiyo panettha sabbesam pi yathāsaka-phalavasena sādharanā va Nirodhasamāpattisamāpajjanam pana anāgāmināñceva arahantānañca labbhati. Tattha yathākkamaṃ pathamajjhānādi-mahaggatasamāpatum samāpajjtvā vuṭṭhāya tatthagata sankhāraddhamme tattha tattheva vipassanto yāva ākūṭa-ññāyatanam gantvā tato param adhiṭṭheyyādikam pubbakiccā katvā nevasaññānāsaññāyatanam samāpajjati. Tassa dvinnam appanājavanānam parato vocchijjati cittasantati. Tato param nirodhasamapanno nāma hoti. Vuṭṭhānakāle pana anāgāmino anāgāmaphalacittam, arahato arahattaphalacittam ekavāramevā pavattitvā bhavangapāto hoti. Tato param paccavekkhanānam pavattati.



## INDEX

### Of important Pali terms and proper names

- Akanittha, 149  
 Akusala, 5, 8  
 Akusala-vipāka, 6, 18  
 Angasamatikkama, 30  
 Accanta, 189  
 Accutapada, 189  
 Aññamañña-paccaya, 227, 239  
 Aññasamāna, 52, 82  
 Atappā, 149  
 Ataparitta, 130  
 Atimahanta, 127, 129  
 Attakammabhava, 215-6  
 Atthipaccaya, 233, 241  
 Advārārūpa, 172  
 Adhiṭṭhāna Vasi, 256  
 Adhipati, 197  
 Adhipati Paccaya, 224, 238  
 Adhimokkha, 55, way of calculation 57, presence and absence 58, in perplexed consciousness 80, 267  
 Anāgāmi, 136  
 Anatta, 271  
 Anantara Paccaya, 226, 234  
 Anantākāsa, 115  
 Anāgata Upapatti Bhava, 215, 6  
 Anāgāmi, 113, born in Suddhāvāsa, 149  
 Anāgāmi Phala, after Nirodha, 140  
 Anāgāmi Magga Citta, 272  
 Amicca, 271  
 Amindriya Rūpa, 173  
 Animitta, 189  
 Animittānupassanā, 274  
 Anuttara, 190  
 Anuloma, 135, 268  
 Anulomañāna, 268  
 Anusaya, 192  
 Anussati, 248  
 Anotappa, 197  
 Apāyabhūmi, 148  
 Appanā, 139, 253, 255, 269  
 Appanājavanavāra, 132  
 Appanihita, 189  
 Appamaññā, 51, 63, 248  
 Appamānasubha, 149  
 Avyākata, 4  
 Abhiññā, 176, 261  
 Arahattaphala, 136, after Nirodha, 140  
 Arahatta Magga & Phala, as object, 114  
 Ariyasacca, 208  
 Arupaloka, organs in, 116, 118  
 Arūpavipāka, generates material qualities, 176, on heart basis, 117  
 Arūpāvacara plane, 145  
 Arūpāvacara jhāna, 254, 259  
 Arūpāvacarabhūmi, 149  
 Aloha, Adosa, Amoha, 3, 5, 7, 21, in Vipāka, 23, 24, 30  
 Avigatapaccaya, 232  
 Avijjamānapaññatti, 244  
 Avijjamānena-avijjamānapaññatti 244  
 Vijjamānena-vijjamāna-paññatti 244  
 Avijjā, 8, 191, 213, 215, belongs to the past, 219, grows with Āsava, 221  
 Avibhūta, 127  
 Avimbbhoga Rūpa, 173  
 Avihā, 149  
 Avyākata, 5, 7  
 Asankhata, 189  
 Asankhārika, 12, 16, 22, 73, 76, 78  
 Asaññasatta, 149  
 Asubha, 248, 253  
 Asurakāyo, 148  
 Ahirika, 60, 197  
 Ahetuka, 5, 7, 19, 20, 177  
 Ahetuka Consciousness 16, 88

- Ahetuka beings, 141  
 Ahetuka-patisandhi-yugala, 84  
 Ahetuka Resultant, 159  
 Ahetuka Vipāka, 160  
 Ākāra, 218  
 Ākiñcañña, 115  
 Ānāpāna, 254  
 Abhassara, 149  
 Āyatana, 207  
 Ārammanādhīpati-  
     Paccaya, 224  
 Ālambana, 109  
 Āvajjana, 94, 95, 97  
 Āvajjana vasi, 256  
 Āsava, 191, 221  
 Āsevana Paccaya, 229, 234  
 Āhāra, 197  
 Āhāra Paccaya, 230, 241  
 Itthibhāvasaka, 180  
 Itthiśaddo, 245  
 Iddhipāda, 200  
 Indriya, 196, 201  
 Indriyapaccaya, 231, 239  
 Indriyarūpa, 173  
 Issā, presence 61, separately &  
     occasionally, 66  
 Uggahanimitta, 255, 257  
 Uṭṭhāna Vasi, 258  
 Udayavyayañāna, 268  
 Uddhacca, 60  
 Uddhaccakukucca, 257  
 Uddhaccasampayutta, 79  
 Upacāra, 135, 235, 255  
 Upaṭṭhāna, 267  
 Upanissayapaccaya, 228, 237  
 Upādāna, 192, 212, 213, 216, 219  
 Upādānakhandha, 207  
 Upādāyarūpa, 169, 239  
 Upekkhā, in distracted mind, 79,  
     87, 90, in Appanā, 136, intadā-  
     lambana, 137  
 Upekkhāsahagata, 12  
 Ekaggatā, 44, 46, 50  
 Ekadvārikacitta, 106  
 Ekahetuka, 92  
 Oggha, 191  
 Nāppa, 197  
 Nātika, 184  
 Obhāsa, 267  
 Kābalinkāra, 197  
 Kāmāvacara-javana, 176  
 Kāmāvacarañānasampayutta  
     consciousness, in Appana, 134  
 Kāmāvacara-patisandhi Citta, 151  
 Kāmasugatibhūmi, 147  
 Kamma, object of Cuti citta, 95, 112,  
     121, 186  
 Kammatṭhāna, 131  
 Kammanimitta, 95, 112, 121, 122,  
     186  
 Kammappaccaya, 230  
 Karuṇā, 63, 68, 70, 71  
 Kalāpa, 179  
 Kasina, 248, 249, 254  
 Kāma-world, 116  
 Kāmacchanda, 247  
 Kāmaloka, 117, 131  
 Kāmāvacara-plane, 144  
 Kāmāvacara moral  
     consciousness, 76  
 Kāmāvacara-kiriyā, 109  
 Kāmāvacara Citta, 8  
 Kāmāvacara Vipāka, 112  
 Kāmasugatī-patisandhi, 151  
 Kāyagatāsati, 254  
 Kāyadasaka, 180, 184, 186  
 Kāyadvāra, 104  
 Kāyaviññāna, 2  
 Kāyaviññatti-navaka, 180  
 Kāyaviññatti-lahutādi-dvāsaka, 181  
 Kāyānupassanā, 200  
 Karmic result, 121  
 Kicca, 94  
 Kiriyā, 3, 4, 6, 8, 17, 19, 25,  
     74, 136  
 Kilesa, 193, 270  
 Kilesa-vaṭṭa, 220  
 Kukkucca, 61, 56  
 Kusala, 3, 136  
 Kusala-vipāka, 6, 10, 18  
 Kusala-hetus, 159  
 Khandha, 206  
 Gatanimitta, 95, 112, 121, 186  
 Ganthā, 192  
 Gocaraggāhika-rūpa, 173  
 Gotrabhū, 135, 269

- Ghāṇḍasaka, 179, 184, 186  
 Ghāṇa-dvāra, 104  
 Ghānaviññāna, 2  
 Ghāyana, 97  
 Cakkhu-kāya Viññāna, 6, 7, 17, 44  
 Cakkhu dasaka, 179, 184, 185, 186  
 Cakkhu-dvāra, 104  
 Cakkhu-viññāna, 2, 246  
 Cātummahārājika Deva, 148  
 Citta (adhipati), 197  
 Cittānupassanā, 200  
 Citta-vithi, 126  
 Cūti-citta, 95, 96, 106, 111, 113  
 Cetanā, 44, 46  
 Cha-dvārika, 107, and also dvāra-vimutta, 108  
 Chanda, 57, 59, 80, 83, 84, 197  
 Chalahhuñño, 245  
 Jarāmarana, 219  
 Javana, 3, 4, 5, kicca 94, 98, Mano-viññānadhātu, 119, 139, number of thought moments, 140, in Jhīna, 140  
 Javana-vāra, 130  
 Jāti, 212, 219  
 Jivhā-dasaka, 179, 184, 186  
 Jivhā-dvāra, 104  
 Jivhā-viññāna, 2  
 Jivita-navaka, 180  
 Jivutindriya, 44, 46, 198  
 Jhāna, 42, 43, 132  
 Jhānāṅga, 195  
 Jhāna-paccaya, 231  
 Nāna, 264, 267  
 Nāna-vippayutta, 22, 111, 114  
 Nānasampayutta, 22, 113  
 Tanhā, 212  
 Tatramajjhataṭṭā, 51  
 Tadālabhāna, 94, 99, 113, 119, 134  
 137, of Arhat 138, where possible 139, in Rūpāvacara, 145  
 Tadālabhāna-vāra, 130  
 Tāvatinī, 148  
 Tīracchāna yoni, 151  
 Tīhetuka beings, 142  
 Tīhetuka consciousness, 93  
 Tusita, 148  
 Thīna-muddha, 61, 247  
 Dassana, 97  
 Dittṭhi, 60, 191  
 Dittṭhigatavippayutta, 12  
 Dittṭhigatasampayutta, 12, 60  
 Dukkha, 88, 89, 271  
 Duhetuka consciousness, 92  
 Domanassa, 14, in Momūha 15, in vipāka, 17, 88, 89, as Jhānāṅga, 195  
 Dosa, 60  
 Dosa carita, 253  
 Dvāra-vimutta, 108  
 Dvīhetuka beings, 141  
 Dvipaṇca viññāna, 84, 119  
 Dhammānupassanā, 200  
 Dhammāyatana, 208  
 Dhātu, 207  
 Natthi paccaya, 233  
 Nānā khanika cetanā, 235  
 Nāma, 242, 243  
 Nāmarūpa, 212  
 Nikkanti, 267  
 Nibbāna, 68, 110, 115, 189, 242, 243, 270  
 Nimmānarati, 148  
 Nirayo, 148  
 Nirodhasamāpatti, 140, 273  
 Nissaya paccaya, 277, 239  
 Nivaraṇa, 192, 247  
 Pakinnaka, 50, 53  
 Pacchājāta Paccaya, 229  
 Paccaya, 222  
 Paccaya-dhamma, 222  
 Paccavekkhanā Vasī, 259  
 Paccuppanna Upapatti Bhava, 21506  
 Paccuppanna Kamma Bhava, 215, 216  
 Paccuppanna Dhamma, 222  
 Pañcadvāra-Vithi, 153, 725  
 Pañcadvāraāvajjana, 2, 5, 20, manodhātu, 84, the object of 112, manodhātu, 118, 119  
 Pañcadvārika Citta, 107  
 Pañca Viññāna, 94  
 Paññatti, 242, 294, 242  
 Paññā, 197  
 Paññindriya, 51  
 Paṇḍita consciousness, 120

- Patīcasamuppāda Naya, 211  
 Patibhāga Nimitta, 257  
 Paṭisandhi, 95, 96, 106, dvāravimutta 111, 121, object, 133, at moment 238, 239, 242  
 Paṭṭhāna, 222  
 Paṭṭhāna naya, 11  
 Paranimmittavasavatti, 148  
 Parikamma, 135, 253, 268  
 Parikamma Nimitta, 255, 322  
 Paritta, 126, 130  
 Parittābha, 148  
 Paritta Bhūmi, 8  
 Paritta Subha, 149  
 Pavatti, 121  
 Passaddhi, 49, 267  
 Pādaka Pañcama Jhāna, 261 Pīti-absence, 56, presence 57, way of calculation 58, presence and absence 59, 69, in Jhāna, 71, distracted mind 80, in votthapana, 82, absence, 84, 267  
 Pettivisaya, 148  
 Puggala Bhava, 141  
 Pumbhāva dasaka, 180  
 Purejāta Paccaya, 228  
 Phala citta, 38 113, 140  
 Phala Samāpatti, 279  
 Phassa, 44, 46, 212  
 Phusanā, 97  
 Balāni, 196, 201  
 Buddhi-carita, 252  
 Bojjhanga, 201  
 Brahma Pārisajja, 548  
 Brahma Purohita, 148  
 Brahmanivāhara, 251  
 Bhavanga compared to deep sleep, 194, 96, mind door 109, 106, Dvāravimutta, 11, object of, 113, Paṭisandhi, 127  
 Bhūmi, 144, 147  
 Magga, 37, for one moment, 140  
 Maggaṅga, 195, 202  
 Magga Paccaya, 232  
 Macchariya, 60, separately and occasionally, 66  
 Masikāra, 44, 46  
 Vyatana, 209  
 Vārāvajjana, 3, 5, 19, same as  
 votthapana, 83, 99  
 Manodvāra-Vithi, 1, 3, 131, in kāmalo, 133, 269  
 Manodhātu, 117, 119  
 Manodhātutika, 83, 112  
 Manosañcetanā, āhāra, 197  
 Mano-Viññāna, on heart basis, 117  
 Manoviññānadhātu, 119  
 Mahaggata-factors combining in 70, types differentiated 76, no Tadāmbana, 99  
 Mano-dvāravithi, 131, appanā, 135  
 Mahaggata Course, objects of 115  
 sets of combination 72  
 Mahaggata Javana, 107  
 Mahanta 127, 129  
 Mahābrahmā, 148  
 Mahā Vipāka-in Manodvāra Vithi, 134  
 Tadāmbana, 137, Paṭisandhi 151, 158  
 Mahābhūta, 168, 238  
 Māna in Lobh-consciousness 60, Separately and occasionally, 66  
 Micchā Diṭṭhi, 196  
 Middha, See Thina  
 Muditā, presence and absence 63, beings as the object 68, separately, 70, in Jhāna, 71  
 Mettā 51  
 Moghavāra, 131  
 Momūha Citta 15  
 Moha 15, 60  
 Yāmā 148  
 Yoga, 191  
 Rāga Carita 251  
 Rāja-putta, 246  
 Rūpa world 116  
 Rūpaloka 117  
 Rūpāvacara Plane 145  
 Rūpāvacara Bhūmi 148  
 Lahutādekādasaka 181, 182  
 Lokuttara 107, 113, 134  
 Lokuttara bhūmi 10, 268  
 Lobha 4, 5, 7, 8, 12, 16, 24, 49, 60  
 Vacivīññatti-dasaka 180  
 Vacivīññatti sadda-lahutādi-terasa-ka 181,

- Vatthudasaka, 180, 184  
 Vavatthana, 251  
 Vigata Paccaya, 232  
 Vicāra, 55, 57, 69, 71  
 Vicikicchā, 61, 80, 247  
 Vicikicchāsampayutta, 15  
 Vijjāmanena Avijjāmanā Paññatti  
 244  
 Vijjāmanena vijjāmanā Paññatti  
 244  
 Viññāna, 45, 212, 197  
 Vitakka, 29, 30, 47, 53, 57, 58, 68, 71  
 Vithi, 125  
 Vipassanā Bhāvanā, 248  
 kammattthāna  
 Vipāka, 3, 4, 7, 8, 17, 19, 213  
 Vipāka Citta, 239  
 Vipāka Consciousness, 75, 76  
 Vipāka Paccaya, 230, 235  
 Vipāka Vatta, 220, 232  
 Vippayutta Paccaya, 241  
 Vibhūta, 127  
 Vimokkha, 264  
 Virati, 62, 66, 74  
 Viriya, 50, 55, 57, 58, 83, 196, 197  
 Visuddhi, 263  
 Vimansā, 197  
 Vedanā, 44, 46, 87, 212  
 Vedanānupassanā, 200  
 Vehapphala, 149  
 Voṭṭhapana, 3, 6, 95, 98, 114, 119,  
 176  
 Voṭṭhapana consciousness  
 (=Manodvārāvajjana), 83  
 Voṭṭhapana Vāra, 131  
 Vyāpāda, 247  
 Sakadāgāmiṃmagga, 36, 113, 136, 272  
 Sankhāra, 212, 219  
 Sankhepa, 217  
 Saññā, 44, 46, 248, 251  
 Sati, 196  
 Satipatthāna, 199  
 Sadda-navaka, 181  
 Sadda-lahutādidvādasaka, 182  
 Saddhā Carita, 252  
 Santirana, 2, 6, 17, gives after  
 -ka paṭisandhi, 83, kicca 94, 97,  
 object of 113, manoviññādhātu,  
 119, in Manodvāra vitā, 134,  
 Tadālabhāna, 137, 141, as  
 Bhavanga, 151  
 Sandhi, 217  
 Sansedaja, 184  
 Sabbacittasādhāraṇa, 50, 53, 84  
 Sabbakusalasādhāraṇa, 60  
 Samatha kammattthana, 247  
 Samatha Bhāvanā, 247, 248  
 Samanantara Paccaya, 226  
 Samādhī, 197  
 Samāpajjanā Vasi, 256  
 Sampaticchana, 2, 7, 17, 83, Kicca  
 94, 112, 117, 119  
 Sampayutta Paccaya, 232  
 Sammappadhāna, 200  
 Sammā Dīṭṭhi, 196  
 Samyojana, 8, 193  
 Salāyatana, 212  
 Sasankhārika, 12, 15, 16, 73, 79  
 Sahajāta Cetanā, 235  
 Sahajāta Paccaya, 226  
 Sahajātādhipati Paccaya, 225  
 Sahetuka, 5, 24  
 Sāyana, 97  
 Sukha, 88, 267  
 Suñña, 189  
 Suññatānupassanā, 271  
 Sutasoma Jātaka, 225  
 Sudassā, 149  
 Sudassi, 149  
 Suddhatthaka, 180, 182  
 Suddhāvāsa, 149  
 Subhakinha, 149  
 Sota-dasaka, 179, 184  
 Sota-dvāra, 104  
 Sotaviññāna, 2  
 Sotāpattimaggā, 120, 272  
 Sotāpanna, 113, 136  
 Sotthāna, 421  
 Sobhāna Cetasika, 31  
 Sobhana Sādhāraṇa, 40, 62  
 Somanassa, 15, 22, 88, 89, in  
 appanā, 135, in Tadālabhāna, 1  
 Hasituppāda, 20, in rūpa, 14  
 Hasituppāda Citta, 231  
 Hasituppāda Consciousness, 8  
 Hiri, 197  
 Hetu, 5, 7, 8, 16, 94, 195  
 Hetu paccaya, 223